Mira Kovatcheva   Mitko Sabev

The History of English
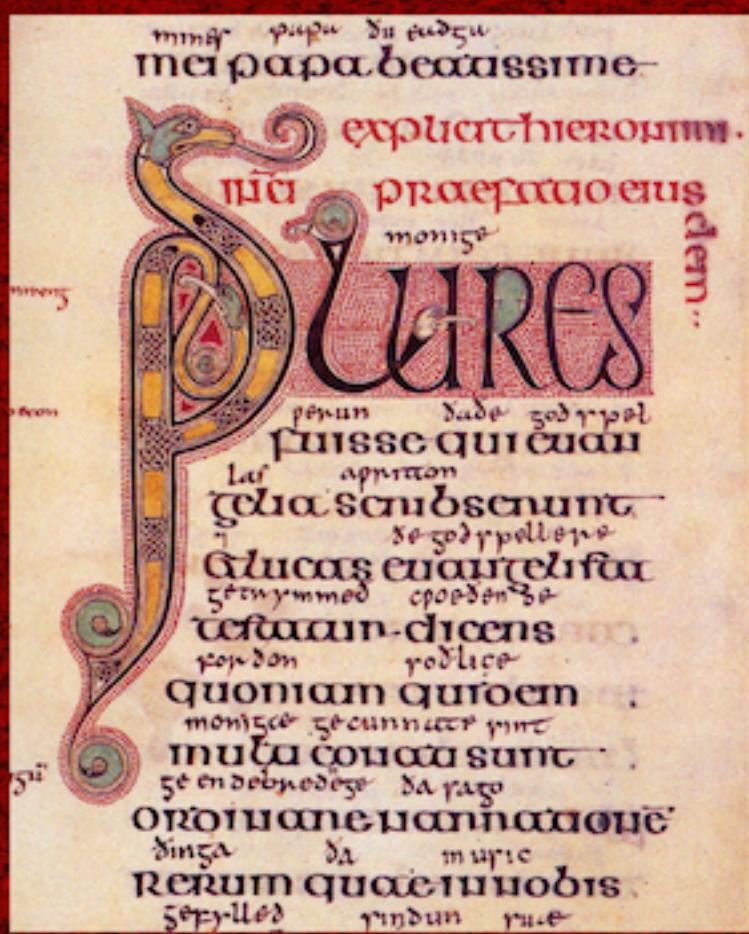
in Texts and Tables

The History of English in Texts and Tables

The History of English

IN TEXTS AND TABLES

Second Edition

Mira Kovatcheva

&

Mitko Sabev

Contents

Introduction

The present selection of short Old and Middle English texts is designed as a reader in the linguistic history of English and English historical linguistics at university level. The Tables section in this edition has been substantially expanded and reorganised; a third part, to do with Modern English developments, has been added. Some of the omissions and typographical errors in the first edition have been corrected.

The choice of literary samples was prompted by the desire to present a comparatively full picture of the existing genres in the Old and Middle English periods. The represented dialects are mainly those that later served as the basis for the national standard variety. The texts included are also meant to be a source of information about the social history of the language – not only because they describe momentous events, but also because they stand witness to their authors' personalities (Alfred, Ælfric, Bede).

The texts are accompanied by suggested discussion topics. The questions deal with problems on all linguistic levels: phonological, morphological, syntactic and lexical. However, they do not exhaust all interesting and relevant linguistic aspects of the particular excerpts; the Tables section contains a detailed guide to text analysis. The sum total of all questions is supposed to cover the most important changes in the history of English fairly completely.

The word histories are selected to illustrate the most high-frequency sound changes whose traces can still be found in Modern English. One of the valuable additions to the book is a glimpse into some modern irregularities that have their diachronic explanations. We do not recommend memorising abstract rules of the type OE /ɑː/ > ME /ɔː/ > ModE /əʊ/. Rather, students are well advised to pick up a familiar word and deduce the rules from its diachronic development, e.g.:
OE *stān* > ME *stone* [stɔːn] > ModE stone /stəʊn/ (never forgetting the period labels!)

The usefulness of the material has been demonstrated during years of teaching. In this context, we would like to thank Dr Bozhil Hristov for his enthusiasm in joining the team and for his valuable comments on the manuscript of this edition.

Abbreviations and symbols

*	reconstructed forms	*jō*	*jō*-stem
<	(derives) from	K	Kentish
>	(changes) to, becomes	L	Latin
#	word boundary	L-	late
ˣ	ungrammatical	m, mac	masculine
Ø	zero, null	ME	Middle English
acc	accusative	MedL	Mediaeval Latin
adj	adjective	MHG	Middle High German
adv	adverb	Midl	Midland
AmE	American English	ModE	Modern English
an	weak (*an*-) declension	N	noun; nasal; Northern
AN	Anglo-Norman	n	neuter
approx	approximant	*nd*	*nd*-stem
Arab	Arabic	neg	negative
Aux	auxiliary	neut	neuter
B	Bulgarian	nom	nominative
BrE	British English	num	numeral
C	consonant	O	object
c	century; circa	O$_D$	direct object
caus	causative verb	OE	Old English
comp, compar	comparative degree	OFr	Old French
conj	conjunction	OFris	Old Frisian
C$_S$	subject complement	OHG	Old High German
D	dental suffix	O$_I$	indirect object
dat	dative	ON	Old Norse
dem	demonstrative	ONFr	Old Northern French
det	determiner	onom	onomatopoeia
E-	early	OS	Old Saxon
f, fem	feminine	p	participle
Fr	French	pers	person, personal
G	German	PG	Proto-Germanic
gen	genitive	PIE	Proto-Indo-European
Gr	Greek	pl	plural
Gth	Gothic	poet	poetic
GVS	Great Vowel Shift	poss	possessive
i	*i*-stem	pp	past participle
imp	imperative	prep	preposition
impers	impersonal verb	Pres	present, present tense
indef	indefinite	pret-pres	preterite-present verb
indic	indicative	pron	pronoun
inf, infin	infinitive	pt	past tense
infl infin	inflected infinitive	ptc	participle
instr	instrumental	*r*	*r*-stem
interj	interjection	refl	reflexive
irreg	irregular verb	rel part	relative particle
IU	*I*-Umlaut	root	root declension
ja	*ja*-stem	S	subject

s	*s*-stem; see	*þ*	*þ*-stem
Scr	Sanscrit	*u*	*u*-stem
sg	singular	V	vowel; verb
subj	subjunctive	W	Western
superl	superlative degree	*wa*	*wa*-stem
suppl	suppletive	*wō*	*wō*-stem
SV	strong verb	WV	weak verb
syll	syllable		

OLD ENGLISH TEXTS

Orosius

Alfred's translation of *Historia Adversus Pagonos*, a textbook of history, to which he added accounts of contemporary travellers.

Nu wille we secgan be suðan Donua þære ea ymbe Creca land, þe lið wyð eastan Constantinopolim, Creca byrig, is se sæ Proponditis: and be norðan Constantinopolim, Creca byrig, scyt se sæ-earm up of þæm sæ west-rihte, þe **man** hæt Euxinus; and, be westan norðan þære byrig, Donua muða þære ea

5 scyt suð-east ut on þone sæ Euxinus; and, on suð-healfe, and on west-healfe þæs muðan, sindon Moesi, Creca leode; and, be westan þære byrig, sindon Traci; and, be eastan þære byrig, Macedonie: and, be suðan þære byrig, on suð-healfe þæs sæs earmes, þe man hæt Egeum, sindon Athena, and Corintus þa land: and, be westan-suðan Corinton, is Achie þæt land, æt ðæm Wendel-

10 sæ. Þas land syndon Creca leode. And be westan Achie, andlang þæs Wendel-sæs, is Dalmatia þæt ðæs sæs; and be norðan Dalmatia sindon Pulgare, and Istria: and be suðan Istria is se Wendel-sæ, þe man hæt Atriaticum; and be westan þa beorgas, þe man hæt Alpis; and be norðan þæt westen, þæt is betux Carendan and Fulgarum.

* * *

15 Ær þam þe Rome burh getimbred wære feower hund wintran and þritig wintra, gewearð þæt Alexander, Priamises sunu, þæs cyninges, of Troiana þære byrig, genam þæs cyninges wif Monelaus, of Læcedemonia Cræca byrig, Elena. Ymb hi wearð þæt mære gewin, and þa miclan gefeoht Cræca and Troiana; swa þæt Cræcas hæfdon M scipa þara miclena dulmuna; and

20 him betweonum gesworan, þæt hi næfre noldan on cyððe cuman, ær hi heora teonan gewræcon. And hi þa tyn gear ymb þa burh sittende wæron and feohtende. Hwa is þæt ariman mæge hwæt þær moncynnes forwearð, on ægðre hand, þæt Omerus, se scop sweotelicost, sæde! Forðon **nis me þæs þearf,** cwæð Orosius, to secganne, forðon hit langsum is, and eac monegum

25 cuð. Ðeah swa hwilcne mon swa lyste þæt witan, ræde on his bocum, hwylc ungetima, and hwilce tibernessa, ægðer ge on monslyhtan, ge on hungre, ge on scipgebroce, ge on mislice forsceapunge, swa mon on spellum segð.

Ða folc him betweonum fulle tyn winter þa gewinn wrecende wæron:

geþence þonne þara tida, and nu þyssa, hwæðer **him bet lycian**!

30   Þa sona of þam gefeohte wæs oðer æfter fylgende. Eneas mid hys fyrde for of
þæm Troaniscan gefeohte in Italiam; þæt mæg man eac on bocum sceawian,
hu manega gewinn, and hu manega gefeoht he þær dreogende wæs.

* * *

Ymb feower hund wintra, and ymb fweortig, þæs þe Traia Cræca burh
awested wæs, wearð Rome burh getimbred, fram twam gebroðran, Remuse

35   and Romuluse; and raïe eafter þan, Romulus hiora angin geunclænsode mid
his broðor slege; and eac syððan mid hiwunge, and his geferena: hwylce
bysena he þær stellende wæs, mid þæm þe hi bædan Sabine þa burhware,
þæt hi him geuðan heora dohtra him to wifum to hæbbenne, and hi heom
þære bena forwyrndon. Hi swa þeah **hiora unþances** mid swicdome hi

40   begeaton, mid þæm þe hi bædan þæt hi him fylstan mostan, þæt hi hiora
godum þe yð blotan meahton. Ða hi him þæs getiðodan, þa hæfdan hi him te
wifum, and hiora fæderum eft agyfan noldan. Ymb þæt wearð þæt mæste
gewin monig gear, oð þe hi forneah **mid ealle** forslegene and forwordene
wæran on ægðere healfe; þæt hi mid nanum þinge ne mihtan gesemede

45   wyrðan, ær þara Romana wif, mid hiora cildum, yrnende wæran gemang
Þæm gefeohte, and hyra fæderum wæron to fotum feallende, and biddende
þæt hi, for þara cilda lufan, þæs gewinnes sumne ende gedyden. Swa
weorðlice, and swa mildelice, was Rome burh on fruman gehalgod, mid
broðor blode, and mid sweora, and mid Romuluses eame Numetores, þone

50   he eac ofsloh, þa he cyningc wæs, and hym sylf syððan **to þæm rice fengc**.
Ðus gebletsode Romulus Romana rice on fruman, mid his broðor blode þone
weall, and mid þara sweora blode þa cyrican, and mid his eames blode þæt
rice. And siððan his agenne sweor to deaðe beswac, þa he hine to him
aspeon, and him gehet þæt he his rice wið hine dælan wolde, and hine under

55   þæm ofsloh.

He þa Romulus æfter þysan underfeng Cirinensa gewinn, þara
burhwarana; forðon þe he þa gyt lytel land-rice hæfde, buton þære byrig
anre. Forðon þe Romulus and ealle Romware oðrum folcum unweorðe
wæron, forðon þe hi on cnihthade wæran oðra manna nydlingas. Ða hi þa

60   hæfdon Cirinensa þa burh ymbseten, and þær mycelne hunger þoliende

wæran, þa gecwædan hy, þæt **him leofre wære**, þæt hi on þæm yrmðum hiora lif geendade, þonne hi þæt gewinn forletan, oððe **frið genaman.** Hi þær þa winnende wæran, oð hi þa burh abræcon; and æfter þæm wið þa land-leode on ælcehealfe unablinnendlice winnende wæran, oð hi þær

65 ymbutan hæfdon monega byrig begitene.

Phrases

frið genaman = genamon 'achieved peace'

him bet lycian = lycien *Subjunctive* '(which) would they like better'

him leofre wære 'it would be dearer to him = he would prefer'

hiora unþances *Adverbial Genitive* 'to their displeasure'

man *Indefinite Subject*

mid ealle 'completely'

nis me þæs þearf 'I don't need this'

to þæm rice fengc 'ascended to the throne'

Discussion topics

How would you relate (2) *eastan* with L *aurora* and (4) *muða* with G *Mund*?

1. What is the origin of the double consonant in (1) *secgan*, (21) *sittende*, (46) *biddende*?

2. Compare:

    (23) *nis me þearf to secganne*, (38) *him to wifum to hæbenne*

   with:

    (40) *fylstan mostan*, (42) *agyfan noldan*

   In what syntactic environment are the two forms of the Old English infinitive used?

3. Compare the usage of the Present Participle with its function in Modern English.

4. Split into morphemes and classify the verbs:

(17) *genam*	(35) *geunclænsode*
(24) *cwæð*	(39) *forwyrndon*
(23) *sæde*	(40) *begeaton*
(19) *hæfdon*	(50) *ofsloh*
(30) *for*	(54) *wolde*

(34) *awested*   (56) *underfeng*

(15) *getimbred*   (63) *abræcon*

Boethius

Alfred's translation of De Consolatione Philosophiae. Metric versions added later.

Prose

Ða ongan se Wisdom singan and giddode þus: þonne seo sunne on hadrum heofone beorhtost scineð, þonne aþeostriað ealle steorran, forðam þe heora beorhtnes ne beoð nan beorhtnes for hire. Ðonne smylte blaweð suðanwestan wind, þonne weaxeð swiðe hraðe feldes blosman; ac þonne se stearca wind

5   cymð norðaneastan, ðonne toweorpð he swiðe hraðe þære rosan wlite; swa oft ðone **to smylton sæ** þæs norðanwindes yst onstyreð. Eala þæt nanwuht nis fæste stondendes weorces awuniende on worulde.

Verse

Ða se Wisdom eft wordhord onleac,
sang soðcwidas, and þus selfa cwæð:

10   Ðonne sio sunne sweotolost scineð
hadrost of heofone, hræðe bioð aþistrod
ealle ofir eorðan oðre steorran,
forþæm hiora birhtu ne bið auht
to gesettane wið þære sunnan leoht.

15   Ðonne smolte blæwð suðan and westan
wind under wolcnum, þonne weaxeð hraðe
feldes blostman, fægen Þæt hi moton.
Ac se stearca storm, þonne he strong cymð
norðan and eastan, he genimeð hraðe

20   þære rosan wlite, and eac þa ruman sæ
norðerne yst nede gebædeð,
þæt hio strange geondstyred on staðu beateð.

Eala, þæt on eorðan auht fæstlices

weorces on worulde ne wunað æfre!

Phrases

to smylton sæ = to smyltan sæ

Discussion topics

1. Compare (7) *woruld* with (1) *weoruld* in *Bede's Account of the Poet Cædmon.* Trace to Modern English.
2. Classify the nouns according to gender and/or stem judging by their genitive endings.
3. Make a list of adverbs and compare to related adjectives.
4. Discuss syntactic variation in (2) *aþeostriað ealle steorran* (11) *bioð aþistrod … oðre steorran.*

Bede's Account of the Poet Cædmon

Alfred's translation from Latin of Bede's *Historia Ecclesiastica Gentis Anglorum*

Wæs he se mon on weoruldhade geseted oð þa tide þe he wæs gelyfedre yldo, and he næfre nænig leoð geleornade. And he forðon oft in gebeorscipe, þonne þær wæs blisse intinga gedemed þæt hie ealle sceolden **þurh endebyrdnesse** be hearpan singan, þonne he geseah þa hearpan him
5 nealæcan, þonne aras he for scome from þæm symble, and ham eode to his huse. Þa he þæt þa sumre tide dyde þæt he forlet þæt hus þæs gebeorscipes, and ut wæs gongende to neata scypene, þara heord him wæs þære nihte beboden, þa he þa þær in gelimplicre tide his limo on reste gesette and onslæpte, þa stod him sum mon æt Þurh swefn, and hine halette and grette
10 and hine be his naman nemnde: "Cædmon, sing me hwæthwegu." Ða andswarode he and cwæð: "Ne con ic noht singan, and ic forþon of þyssum gebeorscipe ut eode, and hider gewat, forðon ic noht cuðe." Eft he cwæð se þe mid him sprecende wæs: "Hwæþere þu meaht me singan." Cwæð he: "Hwæt sceal ic singan?" Cwæð he: "Sing me frumsceaft." Ða he þa þas andsware

15   onfeng, þa ongan he sona singan in herenesse Godes scyppendes, þa fers and
       þa word þe he nefre ne gehyrde...

            Þa aras he from þæm slæpe, and eall þa þe he slæpende song fæste in
       gemynde hæfde, and þæm wordum sona monig word in þæt ylce gemet Gode
       wyrðes songes togeþeodde. Þa com he on morne to þam tungerefan, se þe his

20   ealdormon wæs, sæde him hwylce gyfe he onfeng. And he hine sona to þære
       abbudyssan gelædde, and hire þæt cyðde and sægde. Þa het heo gesomnian
       ealle þa gelærdestan men and þa leorneras, and **him andweardum** het secgan
       þæt swefn and þæt leoð singan, þætte ealra heora dome gecoren wære hwæt
       oððe hwonon þæt cumen wære. Ða wæs him eallum gesegen swa swa hit wæs,

25   þæt him wære from Dryhtne sylfum heofonlic gifu forgyfen. Þa rehton hie him
       and sægdon sum halig spel and godcundre lare word; bebudon him þa, gif he
       mihte, þæt he him sum sunge, and in swinsunge leoðsonges þæt gehwyrfde. Ða
       he þa hæfde þa wisan onfangene, þa eode he ham to his huse, and com eft on
       morgen and þy betstan leoðe geglenged him asong and ageaf þæt him beboden

30   wæs.

Phrases

þurh endebyrdnesse 'in turn'

him andweardum = *Dativus absolutus* 'in his presence'

Discussion topics

1. Explain the diphthong in:

        (1) *weoruld*, (2) *geleornade*, (4) *hearpan*, (3) *sceolden*, (4) *geseah*,

        (7) *heord*, (13) *meaht*, (14) *frumsceaft*, (29) *ageaf*.

2. Reconstruct the Proto-Germanic form of OE *gehyran* (cf. (16) *gehyrde*) if you know
    that:

    a) **y** alternates with **ie**

    b) the root vowel of a Class I weak verb undergoes *I*-Umlaut in Old English
        (provide the relevant environment)

    c) rotacism is involved

3. Give examples of Class II weak verbs.

4. Split into morphemes and explain their function in (22) *gelærdestan*.

5. Discuss the constructions:

> (24) *wæs him eallum gesegen;*
>
> (25) *him wære from Dryhtne heofonlic gifu forgyfen;*
>
> (29) *him beboden wæs.*

Compare with their Modern English equivalents.

The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle

Begins in Alfred's time (871–99) and continues (as the *Peterborough Chronicle*) until 1134.

Anno dccclxxi

Her cuom se here to Readingum on Westseaxe, ond **þæs** ymb iii niht ridon ii eorlas up. Ða gemette hie Æþelwulf aldorman on Englafelda ond him þær wiþ gefeaht ond **sige nam.** Ðæs ymb iiii niht Æþered cyning ond Ælfred his broþor þær micle fierd to Readingum gelæddon ond wiþ þone here gefuhton,

5 ond þær wæs micel wæl geslægen on gehwæÞre hond, ond Æþelwulf aldormon wearþ ofslægen, ond þa Deniscan **ahton** wælstowe **gewald.**

Ond þæs ymb iiii niht gefeaht Æþered cyning and Ælfred his broþur wiþ alne þone here on Æscesdune, ond hie wærun on twæm gefylcum: on oþrum wæs Bachsecg ond Halfdene, þa hæþnan cyningas, ond on oþrum wæron þa

10 eorlas. Ond þa gefeaht se cyning Æþered wiþ þara cyninga getruman, ond þær wearþ se cyning Bagsecg ofslægen; ond Ælfred his broþur þara eorla getruman, ond þær wearþ Sidroc eorl ofslægen se alda, ond Sidroc eorl se gioncga, ond Osbearn eorl, ond Fræna eorl, ond Hareld eorl; ond þa hergas begen gefliemde, ond fela þusenda ofslægenra, ond **on fehtende wæron** oð

15 niht.

Ond þæs ymb xiiii niht gefeaht Æþered cyning ond Ælfred his broður wið þone here æt Basengum, ond þær þa Deniscan sige namon.

Ond þæs ymb ii monaþ gefeaht Æþered cyning ond Ælfred his broþur wiþ þone here æt Meretune, ond hie wærun on tuæm gefylcium; ond hie **butu**

20 gefliemdon ond longe on dæg sige ahton. Ond þær wearð micel wælsliht on gehwæþere hond, ond þa Deniscan ahton wælstowe gewald. Ond þær wearþ Heahmund bisceop ofslægen ond fela godra monna.

Ond þæs ofer Eastron gefor Æþered cyning. Ond he ricsode u gear, ond his lic lið æt Winburnan.

25 Ða **feng** Ælfred Æþelwulfing his broþur **to** Wesseaxna **rice**. Ond þæs ymb anne monaþ gefeaht Ælfred cyning wiþ alne þone here lytle werede æt Wiltune, ond hine longe on dæg gefliemde, ond þa Deniscan ahton wælstowe gewald.

Ond Þæs geares wurdon uiiii folcgefeoht gefohten wiþ þone here on þy

30 cynerice be suþan Temese, ond butan þam þe him Ælfred þæs cyninges broþur ond anlipig aldormon ond cyninges þegnas oft rade on ridon þe mon na ne rimde. Ond þæs geares wærun ofslægene uiiii eorlas ond an cyning. Ond þy geare **namon** Westseaxe **friþ** wiþ þone here.

Phrases

ahton gewald 'took hold of'

butu = begen+twegen

feng to rice 'ascended to the throne'

namon friþ 'achieved peace'

on fehtende wæron 'were engaged in fighting'

sige nam 'won victory'

þæs 'from there'

Discussion topics

1. Why are the vowels long in: **a)** (1) *cuom*, (9) *wæron*; **b)** (1) *se*, (1) *to*; **c)** (8) *oðer*?
2. In what way is noun gender marked?
3. Split into morphemes and explain the function of each one:
   (6) *ofslægen*, (14) *ofslægenra*, (32) *ofslægene*
4. Make a list of case forms governed by prepositions.
5. What is the original PIE consonant in: (1) *ni**h**t*, (4) **b**roþor, (8) **t**wæm, (29) **f**olc if these are related, respectively, to L *nox, noctis*; В *брат*; L *duo*, В *две*; В *полк*?

Andreas

Se eadiga Matheus, se gefelde xx daga þa Drihten Hælende Crist cwæð to Andreæ his apostolæ, **mid þi ðe** he wæs in Achaia þam lande and þær lærde his discipuli. He cwæþ: "Gang on Marmadonia ceastre and alæd þanon Matheus, for þon iii dagas **to lafe syndon** þæt hie hine willað acwellan and

5 him to mete gedon."

Se haliga Andreas him andswarode and he cwæð: "Min Drihten Hælende Crist, hu mæg ic hit on þrim dagum gefaran? Ac **ma wen is** þæt þu onsende þinne engel, se hit mæg hrædlicor gefaran, for þon, min Drihten, þu wast þæt ic eam flæsclic man, and ic hit ne mæg hrædlice gefaran for þon se siðfæt is

10 þider to lang and ic þone weg ne can."

Drihten him to cwæð: "Andreas, geher me, for ðon þe ic þe geworhtne and ic þinne sið gestaðelode and getrymede. Gang nu to þæs sæs waroðe mid þinum discipulum, and þu þær gemetest scip on þam waroðe: astig on þæt mid þinum discipulum."

15 Se haliga Andreas þa aras on mergen and he eode to þære sæ mid his discipulum and he geseah scip on þam waroþe and iii weras on þam sittende. And he wæs gefeonde mid micle gefean and him to cwæð: "Broðor, hwider willað ge faran mid þis medmiclum scipe?"

Drihten Hælend wæs on þam scipe swa se steorreðra, and his twegen englas

20 mid him, þa wæron gehwyrfede on manna onsyne. Drihten Crist him to cwæð: "On Marmedonia ceastre."

Se haliga Andreas him andswarode and he cwæÞ: "broþor, onfoh us mid eow on þæt scip and gelædaþ us on þa ceastre."

Drihten him to cwæð: "Ealle men fleoð of Þære ceastre. **To hwæm** willað ge

25 þider feran?"

Se haliga Andreas him andswarode. He cwæð: "Nedmycel ærende we þider habbaþ and **us is þearf** þæt we hit gefyllon."

Drihten Hælend him to cwæð, "Astigað on þis scip to us and sellaþ us eowerne færsceat."

30 Se haliga Andreas him andswarode: "Gehyrað ge, broðor, nabbað we færsceat. Ac we syndon discipuli Drihtnes Hælendes Cristes, þa he geceas, and

þis bebod he us sealde and he cwæþ: "Ðonne ge faren godspel to lærenne, þonne nabbe ge mid eow hlaf ne feoh ne twifeald hrægl." Gif þu þonne wille mildheortnesse mid us don, saga us þæt hrætlice; gif þu þonne nelle, gecyð us

35   þone weg."

Drihten Hælend him to cwæþ: "Gif þis bebod eow wære geseald fram eowrum Drihtene, astigað hider mid gefean on min scip." Se halga Andreas astah on þæt scip and he gesæt beforan þam steorreðran.

Drihten Hælend him to cwæð: "Ic geseo for þon þe þas broðor synt

40   geswencede of þisse sæwe hreohnesse. Acsa hie hwæþer hi woldon to lande astigian and þin þær onbidan oð þæt þu gefylle þine þenunge, to ðære þu eart sended; and þu eft hwyrfest to him."

Se halga Andreas him to cwæð: "Mine bearn, wille ge to lande faran and min þær onbidan?"

45   His discipuli him andswarodon and hie cwædon: "Gif we gewitaþ fram þe, þonne beo we fram eallum þam godum þe þu us gearwodest. Ac we beoð mid þe **swa hwær swa** þu færest."

Drihten Hælend him to cwæð, to þam halgan Andrea:"Gif þu sy soðlice his discipul se is cweden crist, spec to þinum discipulum be þam mægenum þe þin

50   læreow dyde, þæt sie gebletsod hiere heorte and hie ofergieton þisse sæwe ege."

Se haliga Andreas cwæð to his discipulum: "**Sumre tide**, **mid þi þe** we wæron mid urum Drihtne, we astigon mid him on scip. He ætywde us swa he slæpende were to costianne and dyde swiðe hreoge þa sæ: fram þam winde

55   wæs geworden swa þæt þa selfan yða wæron ahafene ofer þæt scip. We us þa swiðe andrædon and cigdon to him, Drihtne Hælendum Criste, and he þa aras and bebead þam winde æt he gestilde, and was geworden mycel smyltnes on þære sæ; hie ondredon, ealle þa þe his weorc gesawon. Nu þonne, mine bearn, ne ondrædað ge eow, for ðon þe ure God us ne forlæteð."

Phrases

ma wen is 'there is more hope'

mid þi þe 'while'

sumre tide 'once'

swa hwær swa 'wherever'

to hwæm 'what for'

to lafe syndon 'remain'

us is þearf 'we need'

Discussion topics

1. Specifying type of change, trace the development to Modern English:

     (4) *dagas*, (27) *habbaþ*, (32) *sealde*, (33) *hlaf*, (33) *feoh*,

     (42) *sended*, (56) *aras*, (58) *gesawon*, (59) *eow*.

2. Discuss the use of prepositions. Compare to Modern English.

3. Comment on the syntactic variability in:

     (55) *we us þa swiðe andrædon*

     (58) *hie ondredon*

The Battle of Maldon

A fragment of a heroic poem from the end of the 10th century (the battle of 991 is also described in the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*). Archaic in character, reminiscent of *Beowulf*.

    Ælfwine þa cwæð; he on ellen spræc:

    "Gemunað þa mæla þe we oft æt meodo spræcon,

    þonne we on bence beot ahofon,

    hæleð on healle, ymbe heard gewinn;

5   nu mæg cunnian hwa cene sy.

    Ic wylle mine æðelo eallum gecyðan,

    þæt ic wæs on Myrcon miccles cynnes;

    wæs min ealda fæder Ealhelm haten,

    wis ealdorman, woruldgesælig.

10   Ne sceolon me on þære þeode þegenas ætwitan

    þæt ic of þisse fyrde feran wylle,

    eard gesecan, nu min ealdor ligeð

    forheawen æt hilde. **Me is þæt hearma** mæst;

he wæs ægðer min mæg and min hlaford."

15   Ða he forð eode, fæhðe gemunde,

þæt he mid orde anne geræhte

flotan on þam folce, þæt se on foldan læg

forwegen mid his wæpne. Ongan þa winas manian,

frynd and geferan, þæt hi forð eodon.

20   Offa gemælde, æscholt asceoc:

"Hwæt! Þu, Ælfwine, hafast ealle gemanode

þegenas to þearfe, nu ure þeoden lið,

eorl on eorðan. **Us is eallum þearf**

þæt ure æghwylc oðerne bylde

25   wigan to wige, þa hwile þe he wæpen mæge

habban and healdan, heardne mece,

gar and god swurd. Us Godric hæfð,

earh Oddan bearn, ealle beswicene.

Wende þæs for moni man, þa he on meare rad,

30   on wlancan þam wicge, þæt wære hit ure hlaford;

forðan wearð her on felda folc totwæmed,

scyldburh tobrocen. Abreoðe his angin,

Þæt he her swa manigne man aflymde!"

    Leofsunu gemælde and his linde ahof,

35   bord to gebeorge; he þam beorne oncwæð:

"Ic þæt gehatte, þæt ic heonon nelle

fleon fotes trym, ac wille furðor gan,

wrecan on gewinne minne winedrihten.

Ne þurfon me embe Sturmere stedefæste hæleð

40   wordum ætwitan, nu min wine gecranc,

þæt ic hlafordleas ham siðie,

wende fram wige, ac **me sceal wæpen niman**,

ord and iren."

Phrases

me is þæt hearma 'it hurts me most'

us is eallum þearf 'it is necessary for all of us'

me sceal wæpen niman 'I should take up arms'

Discussion topics

1. Give examples of Breaking and Palatal Diphthongisation.

2. Explain the alternation of single and double consosnants in the paradigm of OE *licgan* (cf. (12) *ligeð*).

3. What does (36) *nelle* stand for?

4. In what case are the pronouns in the following and why?

   (13) *me is þæt hearma mæst*

   (23) *us is eallum þearf*

5. Analyse the form and meaning of *habban* in:

   (21) *Þu ... hafast ealle gemanode*

   (27-8) *us Godric hæfð ... ealle beswicene*

Doomsday

Þat gelimpan sceal þætte lagu floweð,
flod ofer foldan: feores bið æt ende
anra gehwylcum. Oft mæg se þe wile
in his sylfes sefan soð geþencan.

5 Hafað Him geþinged hider þeoden user
on þæm mæsten dæge, mægencyninga Hyhst;
wile þonne forbærnan Brego moncynnes
lond mid lige. Nis þæt lytulu spræc
to geheganne. Hat bið onæled

10 siððan fyr nimeð foldan sceatas,
byrnende lig beorhte gesceafte.
Bið eal þes ginna grund gleda gefylled,
reðra bronda, swa nu rixiað
gromhydge guman, gylpe strynað,

15   hyra hlaforde gehlæges tilgað

oððæt hy beswicað synna weardas,

þæt hi **mid þy heape** helle secað,

fleogað mid þam feondum. Him bið fyr ongean,

droflic wite, þær næfre dæg scineð

20   leohte of lyfte, ac a bilocen stondeð

siððan þæs gæstes gryre agiefen weorþeð.

Ufan hit is enge ond hit is innan hat;

nis þæt betlic bold, ac þær is brogna hyhst,

ne noht hyhtlic ham, ac þær is helle grund,

25   sarlic siðfæt þam ðe sibbe ful oft

tomældeð mid his muðe. Ne con he þa mircan gesceaft,

hu hi butan ende ece stondeð

Þam þe þær for his synnum onsægd weorðeð,

ond þonne a to ealdre orleg dreogeð.

Phrases

anra gehwylcum 'to everyone'

mid þy heape 'by the heap'

Discussion topics

1. Relate (23) *hyhst* to its base form. Trace to Modern English.
2. Relate (26) *mircan* to ModE *murky*.
3. Make a list of all occurrences of genitive modifiers.
4. Describe the semantic function of the dative case in:

      (6) *on þæm mæsten dæge*

      (18) *him bið fyr ongean*

      (26) *mid his muðe*

Ælfric's Colloquy

Ælfric (955–1010) was a theologian and a teacher. The *Colloquy* was intended as a beginner's textbook in Latin and an interlinear gloss was added in West Saxon. Today the work is chiefly of interest for the lively picture it presents of the activities of the middle and lower classes of Anglo-Saxon society.

We cildra biddað þe, eala lareoþ, þæt þu tæce us sprecað
Nos pueri rogamus te,   magister,   ut   doceas nos loqui

        forðam ungelærede we syndon 7 gewæmmodlice
latialiter recte, quia   idiote   sumus et corrupte

we sprecan.
  loquimur.

Hwæt wille ge sprecan?
Quid   vultes   loqui?

5   Hwæt rece we hwæt we sprecan, buton hit riht spræc sy 7
Quid curamus quid loquamur,   nisi   recta locutio sit et

behefe, næs idel oððe fracod.
utilis,   non anilis aut turpis.

Wille beswungen on leornunge?
Vultus flagellari   in discendo?

Leofre ys us beon beswungen for lare þænne hit ne
Carius est nobis   flagellari   pro doctrina quam

cunnan. Ac we witun þe bilewitne wesan 7 nellan
nescire. Sed   scimus te mansuetum esse et nolle

10   onbelæden swincgla us, buton þu bi togenydd fram us.
inferre   plagas nobis, nisi   cogaris   a nobis.

Ic axie ðe,   hwæt sprycst ðu? Hwæt hæfst þu weorces?
Interrogo te, quid mihi loqueris? Quid habes   operis?

Ic eom geanwyrde monuc, 7 ic sincge ælce dæg seofon
Professus sum   monachus, et psalam omni die septem

tida mid gebroðrum, 7 ic eom bysgod   7 on sange, ac
sinaxes cum fratribus, et occupatus sum lectionibus et cantu, sed

þeahhwæðere ic wolde betwenan leornian sprecan on leden
tamen   vellem interim   discere sermocinari latina

15   gereorde.
    lingua.

    Hwæt cunnon þas þine geferan?
    Quid   scinti   isti tui socii?

    Sume synt yrðlincgas, sume scephyrdas, sume oxanhyrdas,
    Alii   sunt aratores,   alii opiliones,   quidam bubulci,

    sume eac swylce huntan, sume fisceras, sume fugeleras,
    quidam etiam   venatores, alii piscatores, alii   aucupes,

    sume cypmenn,   sume scewyrhtan,   sealteras,   bæceras.
    quidam mercatores, quidam sutores, quidam salinatores, quidam pistores, coci.

20   Hwæt sægest þu, yrðlingc? Hu   begæst þu weorc þin?
    Quid   dicis   tu, arator? Quomodo exerces   opus tuum?

    Eala, leof hlaford, ðearle ic deorfe. Ic ga ut on dægræd
    O,   mi domine,   nimium laboro.   Exeo   diluculo

    þywende oxon to felda,   7 iugie hig to syl;   nys hit swa
    minando boves ad campum, et iungo eos ad aratrum; non es tam

    stearc winter þæt ic durre lutian æt ham for ege hlafordes
    aspera hiems ut   audeam latere   domi pro timori domini

    mines, ac geiukodan oxan, 7 gefæstnodon sceare 7 cultre
    mei,   sed iunctus   bobus, et confirmato   vomere et cultro

25   mit þære syl, ælce dæg ic sceal erian fulne æcer oððe mare.
    aratro,   omni die   debeo arare integrim agrum aut plus.

    Hæfst þu ænigne geferan?
    Habes   aliquem socium?

    Ic hæbbe sumne cnapan þywende oxan mid gadisene, þe
    Habeo quendam puerum minantem boves cum stimulo,   qui

    eac swilce nu has ys for cylde and hreame.
    etiam modo raucus est pre frigore et clamatione.
    Hwæt mare dest ðu on dæg?
    Quid amlius facis   in die?

30   Gewyslice þænne mare ic do. Ic sceal fyllan binnan oxan
    Certe   adhuc plus   facio. Debeo implere presepia boum

    mid hig, and wæterian hig, 7 scearn heora beran ut.
    feno,   et adaquare eos, et fimum eorum portate foras.

Hig! Hig! micel gedeorf ys hit.
O! O! magnus labor.

Geleof, micel gedeorf hit ys, forþam ic neom freoh.
Etiam, magnus labor est, quiam non sum liber.

Sceaphyrde, hæfst þu ænig gedeorf?
Quid dicis tu, opilio? Habes tu aliquem laborem?

35 Gea, leof, ic hæbbe: on forewerdne morgen ic drife sceap
Etiam, habeo: in primo mane mino oves

mine to heora læse, 7 stande ofer hig on hæte 7 on cyle
meas ad pascua, et sto super eas in stu et frigore

mid hundum, **ðe læs** wulfas forswelgen hig, and ic
cum canibus, ne lupi devorent eas, et

agenlæde hig on heora loca, 7 melke hig tweowa on dæg,
reduco eas ad caulas, et mulgeo eas bis in die,

7 heora loca ic hæbbe, on þærto 7 cyse and buteran ic do;
et caulas eorum moveo, insuper et caseum et butirum facio;

40 7 ic eom getrywe hlaforde minon.
et fidelis sum domino meo.

Eala, oxanhyrde, hwæt wyr(c)st þu?
O, bubulce, quid operaris tu?

Eala, hlaford min, micel ic gedeorfe. Ðænne se yrðlingc
O, domine mi, multum laboro. Quando arator

unscenð þa oxan, ic læde hig to læse, 7 ealle niht ic stande
disiungit boves, ego duco eas ad pascua, et tota nocte sto

ofer hig waciende for þeofan, 7 eft on ærnemergen ic
super eos vigilando propter fures, et iterum primo mane

45 betæce hig ðam yrðlincge wel gefylde 7 gewæterode.
adsigno eos aratori bene pastos et adaquatos.
Ys þæs of þinum geferum?
Est iste ex tuis socii?

Gea, he ys.
Etiam est

Cannst þu ænig þing?
Scis tu aliquid?

Ænne cræft ic cann.
 Unam arte scio.

50   Hwylcne?
 Qualem?

Hunta ic eom.
Venator sum.

Hwæs?
Cuius?

Cincges.
Regis.

Hu   begæst þu cræft þinne?
Quomodo exerces   artem tuam?

55   Ic brede me max 7 sette hig on stowe gehæppre, 7 getihte
 Plecto mihi retia et pono ea in loco   apto,   et instigo

hundas mine þæt wildeor hig ehtoðon, oðþæt hig becuman
canes   meos ut feras   persequantur, usque quo perveniunt

to þam nettan unforsceadwodlice 7 Þæt hig swa beon
ad   retia   inprovise   et   sic

begrynodo, 7 ic ofslea hig on þam maxum.
inretientur, et ego iugulo eas in   retibus.

Ne canst þu huntian buton mid netum?
 Nescis   venare   nisi   cum retibus?

60   Gea, butan nettum huntian ic mæg.
Etiam sine retibus venare   possum.

Hu?
Quomodo?

Mid swiftum hundum ic betæce wildeor.
Cum velocibus canibus   insequor feras.
Hwylce wildeor swyðost gefehst þu?
Quales feras   maxime capis?

Ic gefeo heortas 7 baras 7 rann 7 rægan 7 hwilon haran.
 Capio   cervos et apros et dammas et capreos et aliquando lepores.

65   Wære þu todæg on huntnoðe?
Fuisti   hodie   in venatione?

Ic næs, forðam sunnandæg ys, ac gyrstandæg ic wæs on
Non fui, quia dominicus dies est, sed heri   fui in

huntunge.
venatione.

Hwæt gelæhtest Þu?
Quid cepisti?

Twegen heortas 7 ænne bar.
Duos   cervos et unum aprum.

70 Hu gefencge þu hig?
Quomodo cepisti eos?

Heortas ic gefencg on nettum 7 bar ic ofsloh.
Cervos   cepi   in retibus et aprum iugulavi.

Hu wære þu dyrstig ofstikian bar?
Quomodo fuisti ausus iugulare aprum?

Hundas bedrifon hyne to me, 7 ic togeanes standende
Canes perduxerunt eum ad me, et ego econtra stans

færlice ofstikode hyne.
subito iugulavi eum.

75 Swyðe þryste þu wære þa.
Valde audax   fuisti tunc.

Ne sceal hunta forhtfull wesan,   forðam mislice wildeor
Non debet vemator formidolosus esse, quia   varie   bestie

wuniað on wudum.
morantur in silvis.

Hwæt dest þu be þinre huntunge?
Quid   facis   de tua   venatione?

Ic sylle cince swa hwæt swa ic gefo, forðam ic eom hunta
Ego do regi quicquid   capio, quia   sum venator
80 hys.
eius.

Hwæt sylð he þe?
Quid   dat ipse tibi?

He scryt me wel 7 fett 7 hwilon sylð me hors oððe beah,
    Vestit me bene et pascit, aliquando dat mihi equum aut armillam,

þæt þe lustlicor cræft minne ic begancge.
ut   libentius artem meam   exerceam.

Phrases

ðe læs 'lest'

Discussion topics

1. Why are the forms (11) *sprycst* and (29) *dest* umlauted?

2. Discuss the origin and the later development of short and long **æ**, as in:

hwæt	*spræc*
þæt	*hæte*
tæcan	*færlice*
bæcere	*sægest*
fæstnian	*wæter*
ænig	*cræft*
ræge	*hwæðere*
ælce	

3. Make a list of subjunctive forms and compare them to their Modern English equivalents.

4. What are the grammatical markers of interrogative sentences?

5. Analyse syntactic variability in:

   (65) *wære þu todæg on huntnoðe?*

   (66-7) *ic wæs on huntunge.*

Blickling Homily X

The manuscript is dated 971 but that is not the original date of the text.

Men þa leofostan, hwæt, nu anra manna gehwylcne ic myngie and lære, ge weras ge wif, ge geonge ge ealde, ge snottre ge unwise, ge þa welegan ge þa þearfan, þæt **anra gehwylc** hine sylfne sceawige and ongyte and, swa hwæt swa he on mycclum gyltum oððe on medmycclum gefremede, þæt he þonne
5   hrædlice gecyrre to þam selran and to þon soðan læcedome. Þonne magon we us God ælmihtigne mildne habban, for þon þe Drihten wile ðæt ealle men syn hale and gesunde and to þon soðan andgite gecyrran. Swa Dauid cwæð, þa eaðmodan heortan and þa forhtgendan and þa cwacigendan and þa

ondrædendan heora Scyppend, ne forhogað þa næfre God ne ne forsyhð. Ah

10 heora bena he gehyreð, þonne hie to him cleopiað and him are biddað.

Magon we þonne nu geseon and oncnawan and swiðe gearelice ongeotan þæt þisses middangeardes ende swiðe neah is, and manige frecnessa æteowde, and manna wohdæda and wonessa swiðe gemonigfealdode. And we fram dæge to oðrum geaxiað ungecyndelico witu and ungecyndelice deaðas geond

15 þeodland to mannum cumene. And we oft ongytað þæt ariseð þeod wið þeode and ungelimplico gefeoht on wolicum dædum. And we gehyrað oft secggan gelome worldricra manna deað þe heora lif mannum leof wære, and þuhte fæger and wlitig heora lif and wynsumlic. Swa we eac geaxiað mislice adla on manegum stowum middangeardes and hungras wexende. And manig yfel we

20 geaxiað her on life gelomlician and wæstmian, and nænig god awunigende and ealle worldlicu ðing swiðe synlicu. And colað to swiðe seo lufu þe we to urum hælende habban sceoldan, and þa godan weorc we anforlætað þe we for ure saule hæle began sceoldan. Þas tacno þyslico syndon þe ic nu hwile big sægde be þisse worlde earfoðnessum and fræcnessum. Swa Crist sylfa his geongrum

25 sægde þæt þas þing ealle geweorðan sceoldan ær þisse worlde ende.

Uton we nu efstan ealle mægene godra weorca and geornfulle beon Godes miltsa, nu we ongeotan magon þæt þis nealæcð worlde forwyrde. For þon ic myngige and manige manna gehwylcne þæt he his agene dæda georne smeage, þæt he her on worlde for Gode rihtlice lifge and on gesyhðe þæs hehstan

30 Cyninges.

Syn we rummode þearfendum mannum, and earmum ælmesgeorne. Swa us God sylfa bebead þæt we soðe sibbe heoldan and geðwærnesse us betweonon habban. And þa men þe bearn habban, læran hie þam rihtne þeodscipe and him tæcean lifes weg and rihtne gang to heofonum: and gif hie on ænigum

35 dæle wolice libban heora lif, syn hie þonne sona from heora wonessum onwende, and fram heora unrihtum oncyrron, þæt we þurh þæt ealle Gode lician. Swa hit eallum geleaffullum folcum beboden standeð, næs na þam anum þe Gode sylfum underþeodde syndon mid mycclum hadum – biscopas and cyningas and mæssepreostas and heahdiaconas – ac eac soðlice hit is beboden

40 subdiaconum and munecum, and is eallum mannum nedþearf and nytlic, þæt hie heora fulwiht and hadas wel gehealdan.

Ne beo nænig man her on worldrice on his geðohte to modig, ne on his lichoman to strang, ne niða to georn, ne bealwes to beald, ne bregda to full - ne inwit to leof, ne wrohtas to webgenne, ne searo to renigenne.

45   Ne þearf þæs nan man wenan þæt his lichama mote oððe mæge þa synbyrðenna on eorðscrafe gebetan: ah he þær on moldan gemolsnað and þær wyrde bideð, hwonne se ælmihtiga god wille þisse worlde ende gewyricean. And þonne he his byrnsweord getyhð and þas world ealle þurhslyhð and þa lichoman þurhsceoteð and þysne middangeard tocleofeð and þa deadan up
50   astandað, bið þonne se flæschoma ascyred swa glæs, ne mæg þæs unrihtes beon awiht bedigled. For þon we habbað nedþearfe þæt we to lange ne fylgeon inwitweorcum... And we sceolan gelyfan synna forlætnessa and lichoman æristes on domes dæg. And we sceolan gelefan on þæt ece lif and on þæt heofonlice rice þæt is gehaten eallum þe nu syndan godes wyrhtan. Þis is se
55   rihta geleafa þe æghwylcum men gebyreð þæt he wel gehealde and gelæste, for ðon þe man wyrhta ne mæg god weorc wyrcean for Gode buton lufon and geleafan. And **us is mycel nedþearf** þæt we us sylfe geþencean and gemunan, and þonne geornost þonne we gehyron Godes bec us beforan reccean and rædan and godspell secggean and his wuldorþrymmas mannum cyðan. Uton
60   we þonne georne teolian þæt we æfter þon þe beteran syn and þe selran for þære lare þe we oft gehyrdon.

Eala men þa leofostan, hwæt, we sceolan geþencean þæt we ne lufian to swyðe þæt þæt we forlæton sceolan, ne þæt huru ne forlætan to swiðe þæt we ecelice habban sceolan.

Phrases

anra gehwylc 'everyone'

us is mycel nedþearf 'it is a great need for us = we must'

Discussion topics

1. Examine the origin and the later development of **y** in:

    (1) *gehwylc*; (4) *mycel*

2. Trace to Modern English:

    (3) *sceawige*; (6) *ealle*; (18) *fæger*; (41) *healdan*.

3. Make a list of strong forms of adjectives.

4. Explain why the complements in the following Verb Phrases are not in the Accusative (determine in which case they are):

   (18) *we eac geaxiað mislice adla*;

   (45) *ne þearf þæs nan man wenan*;

   (51) *we to lange ne fylgeon inwitweorcum*;

   (52) *we sceolan gelyfan synna forlætnessa and lichoman æristes*

   (compare with (53) *we sceolan gelefan on þæt ece lif*).

5. Find examples of the following word order patterns:

   OSV, $SO_I(O_D)V$, SC_SV, VS, $SAuxO_DV$

The Peterborough Chronicle

A continuation of the Anglo-Saxon Chronicle.

Millesimo lxxxvii

    Eala, reowlic 7 wependlic tid wæs þæs geares, þe swa manig ungelimp wæs forþbringende! Eac on þam ilcan geare, toforan Assumptio Sancte Marie, for Willel cyng of Normandige into France mid fyrde, 7 hergode uppan his agenne hlaford, Phillipe þam cynge, 7 sloh of his mannon mycelne dæl, 7

5   forbearnde þa burh Maðante 7 ealle þa halige mynstres þe wæron innon þære burh; 7 twegen haligen menn þe hyrsumedon Gode on ancersettle wunniende þær wæron forbearnde. Ðissum þus gedone, se cyng Willelm cearde ongean to Normandige. Reowlic þing he dyde, 7 reowlicor him gelamp. Hu reowlicor? **Him geyfelade** 7 þet him stranglice eglade. Hwæt mæg ic teollan? Se scearpa

10   deað Þe ne forlet ne rice menn ne heane, seo hine genam. He swealt on Normandige on Þone nextan dæg æfter Natiuitas Sancte Marie, 7 **man** bebyrgede hine on Caðum æt Sancte Stephanes mynstre; ærer he hit arærde 7 syððan mænifealdlice gegodade. Eala, hu leas 7 hu unwrest is ðysses middaneardes wela! Se þe wæs ærur rice cyng 7 maniges landes hlaford, he

15   næfde þa ealles landes buton seofon fotmæl; 7 se þe wæs hwilon gescrid mid golde 7 mid gimmum, he læg þa oferwrogen mid moldan. He læfde æfter him þreo sunan: Rodbeard het se yldesta, se wæs eorl on Normandige æfter him;

se oðer het Willelm, þe bær æfter him on Engleland þone kinehelm; þe þridda het Heanric, þam se fæder becweð gersuman unateallendlice. Gif hwa

20 gewilnigeð to gewitane hu gedon mann he wæs, oððe hwilcne wurðscipe he hæfde, oððe hu fela lande he wære hlaford, þonne wille we be him awritan swa swa we hine ageaton þe him on locodon 7 oðre hwile on his hirede wunedon. Se cyng Willelm þe we embe specað wæs swiðe wis man, 7 swiðe rice, 7 wurðfulre and strengere þonne ænig his foreganga wære. He wæs

25 milde þam godum mannum þe God lufedon, 7 **ofer eall gemett** stearc þam mannum þe wiðcwædon his willan. On þam ilcan steode ðe God him geuðe þet he moste Engleland gegan, he arerde mære mynster 7 munecas þær gesætte 7 hit wæll gegodode. On his dagan wæs þet mære mynster on Cantwarbyrig getymbrad, 7 eac swiðe manig oðer ofer eall Englaland. Eac þis

30 land wæs swiðe afylled mid munecan, 7 þa leofodan heora lif æfter Sanctes Benedictus regule. 7 se Cristendom wæs swilc on his dæge þet ælc man hwæt his hade to belumpe folgade se þe wolde. Eac he wæs swyðe wurðful. Þriwa he bær his cynehelm ælce geare swa oft swa he wæs on Englelande: on Eastron he hine bær on Winceastre; on Pentecosten on Westmynstre, on Midwintre

35 on Gleaweceastre; 7 Þænne wæron mid him ealle þa rice men ofer eall englaland, arcebiscopas 7 leodbiscopas, abbodas 7 eorlas, þegnas 7 cnihtas. Swilce he wæs eac swiðe stearc man 7 ræðe, swa þet man ne dorste nan þing ongean his willan don. He hæfde eorlas on his bendum þe dydan ongean his willan; biscopas he sætte of heora biscoprice, 7 abbodas of heora abbotrice, 7

40 þægnas on cweartern. 7 æt nextan he ne sparode his agene broðor, Odo het. He wæs swiðe rice biscop on Normandige - on Baius wæs his biscopstol - 7 wæs manna fyrmest toeacan Þam cynge; 7 he hæfde eorldom on Englelande, 7 þonne se cyng wæs on Normandige, þonne wæs he mægester on þisum lande. 7 hine he sætte on cweartern. Betwyx oðrum þingum, nis na to

45 forgytane þet gode frið þe he macode on þisan lande, swa þet an man þe himsylf aht wære mihte faran ofer his rice, mid his bosum full goldes, ungederad. 7 nan man ne dorste slean oðerne man, næfde he næfre swa mycel yfel gedon wið Þone oðerne. 7 gif swilc carlman hæmde wið wimman **hire unðances**, sona he forleas þa limu þe he mid pleagode. He rixade ofer

50 Englæland; 7 hit mid his geapscipe swa þurhsmeade þet næs an hid landes

innan Englælande þet he nyste hwa heo hæfde, oððe hwæs heo wurð wæs, 7
syððan on his gewrit gesætt. Brytland him wæs on gewealde, 7 he þærinne
casteles gewrohte 7 þet manncynn **mid ealle** gewealde. Swilce eac Scotland
he him underþædde for his mycele strengðe. Normandige þet land wæs his

55 gecynde; 7 ofer þone eorldom þe Mans is gehaten he rixade. 7 gif he moste **þa
gyt** twa gear libban, he hæfde Yrlande mid werscipe gewunnon 7 wiðutan
ælcon wæpnon. Witodlice on his timan hæfdon men mycel geswinc 7 swiðe
manige teonan.

Phrases

him geyfelade 'he fell ill'
hire unðances 'at her displeasure'
man *indefinite subject*
mid ealle 'completely'
ofer eall gemett 'extraordinarily'
þa gyt 'still more'

Discussion topics

1. Explain the ending *-on/-an* instead of *-um* in (4) *of his mannon,* (28) *on his dagan;*
   -an instead of *-on* in (30) *leofodan,* (39) *dydan;* *-ade* instead of *-ode* in (13) *gegodade.*
   Give more examples of the same phenomenon.
2. Discuss the adverbial use of case forms in (1) *þæs geares* and (33) *ælce geare.*
3. Trace to ModE (4) *agenne,* (17) *þreo,* (45) *macode.*
4. What do (47) *næfde* and (51) *nyste* stand for?
5. Give examples of umlauted comparative or superlative forms of adjectives.

The West Saxon Gospels: Mark II

With the authorised King James Version (commissioned by King James in 1611)

6   Þar wæron sume of ðam bocerum sittende, and on heora heortum þencende,
     But there were certaine of the Scribes sitting there, and reasoning in their hearts,

7   Hwy spycð þæs þus? he dysegað; hwa mæg synna forgyfan butan God ana?

           Why doeth this man thus speake blasphemies? Who can forgiue sinnes but God only?

8   Ða se Hælend þæt on his gaste oncneow, þæt hi swa betwux him þohton, he
           cwæð to him, Hwi ðence ge þas ðing on eowrum heortan?

           *And immeadiately, when Iesus perceiued in His spirit, that they so reasoned within
           themselues, he said vnto them, Why reason ye these things in your hearts?*

9   Hwæðer is eðre to secgenne to ðam laman, Þe synd ðine synna forgyfene;
           hwæðer þe cweðan, Aris, nim ðin bed, and ga?

           *Whether is it easier to say to the sicke of the palsie, Thy sinnes be forgiuen thee: or to
           say, Arise, and take vp thy bed and walke?*

10   Þæt ge soðlice witon þæt mannes sunu hæfð anweald on eorðan synna to
           forgyfanne, he cwæð to ðam laman,

           *But that yee may know that the sonne of man hath power on earth to forgiue sinnes,
           (he saith to the lame one),*

11   Þe ic secge, Aris, nim ðin bed, and ga to ðinum huse.

           I say vnto thee, Arise, and take vp thy bed and goe thy way into thine house.

Discussion topics

1. Why is the vowel in (7) *spycð* different from the infinitive OE *sp(r)ecan*?

2. Discuss the innovations in

   • (6) *sume of ðam bocerum*;

   • (9) *ðine*, (11) *ðinum.*

3. Compare (9*) Þe synd ðine synna forgyfene* with its ModE equivalent.

Old English Glossary

Use of the Glossary requires some knowledge of OE word formation and inflectional morphology. For these, refer to the **Tables** at the end of the book.

Words are arranged according to the first letter of the root, with the exception of words with the negative prefix **un**-, which are listed under *U*.

Compound words: each root is listed as an individual entry in most cases. If compound words are listed as such, they are entered according to the letter of the first root.

Predictable words are not included in the glossary, e.g. OE *wind*, except if they illustrate a change.

If the stem is not specified, masculine and neuter nouns are *a*-stems, and feminine nouns are *ō*-stems.

Roman numbers *I–III* refer to classes of weak verbs; Arabic numbers *1–7* to strong verb classes.

Spelling variants (diachronic and dialectal):
    an/on; am/om
    i/y/ie
    a/æ/e
    c/g/h
    ah, oh / ā, ō
    ig/ī
    ie/ige
    weor/wur/wyr

Abbreviations: see p. 4

A, Æ

ā *adv*	always
abbod *m*	abbot *Gth* abba 'father'
abbudysse *f an*	abbess
ac/ah *conj*	but; because
æcer *m*	acre, field *Gr* agros
ādl *f*	disease
æfre *adv*	ever
āgen *adj*	own, peculiar *s* āgan *OE* Tables
ægðer *pron*	either
æghwylc *pron*	each, every; whoever
āht *n*	anything *s* awiht
ahton *pt pl*	*s* āgan *pret-pres OE* Tables
āncersettl *n*	anchoret's cell

æht *f*	property
on-ǣlan *I*	to set fire to
ǣlc *pron*	each
ælmesse *f*	alms
ælmihtig *adj*	almighty
ānlipig/ānlypig *adj*	only, solitary; alone
ǣr *adv* ǣrer/ǣrur *comp*	before
ār *f*	mercy
ge-arian *II*	to honour; to endow
ǣrende *n ja*	errand, business, care
ǣrist *m i*	resurrection
ǣrne *adj*	early
æsc-holt *n*	ash-wood; a spear
æðelo *adj*	noble *G* edel
āwiht/āwuht/āuht *pron*	anything
(ge)-axian/-ascian *II*	to ask

B

bæcere *m ja*	baker
(ge)-bǣdan *I*	to compel; to oppress
bār *m*	boar
for-bærnan/-bearnan *I*	to burn sth up, destroy by burning
beah *m*	ring
beald *adj*	bold
bealu *n*	harm, evil
bearn *n*	child
bēatan *I*	to beat
bēc *pl root*	*s* bōc
bēgen *pron*	both
bēn *f i*	request, demand; praying
benc *f*	bench
bend *f jō*	band, bond; rope
be-bēodan *2*	to command, to order

beorg *m*	mountain *G* Berg
ge-beorg *n*	defence *cf* beorgan 'to save'
beorhtan *I*	to light up, to illuminate, to shine (on)
beorhtu/birhtu *f*	brightness *OS* berht
beorn *m poet*	man, warrior, rich
ge-bēorscipe *m i*	banquet, feast
bēot *n*	threat, peril; boasting
bera *m an*	bear
beran *4*	to bear
bet(t) *comp*	*s* gōd
ge-bētan *I*	to make better; to atone for
betlic *adj*	excellent
betst *superl*	*s* gōd
on-bīdan *1*	to abide, to wait + *Gen*
biddan *5*	to ask, to pray, to order
bilewit *adj*	kind, gentle
binn *f*	manger
biscop-stōl *m*	the seat/residence of a bishop
bīsen/bȳsen *f*	example, pattern
blæc *adj*	black
blāwan *7*	to blow
ge-bletsian *II*	to bless
bliss *f jō*	joy < bliþs *s* blīðe
ge-blissian *II*	to rejoyce
blīðe *adj*	joyful
blōd *n*	blood
blōdegian *II*	to make bloody
blōdgyte *m*	bloodshed *OE* gēotan 'to pour'
blōs(t)ma *m an*	blossom
blōtan *7* blēot	to kill, to sacrifice
bōc *f root*	book *B* бук, буква
be-bod *n*	command
bodi(g)an *II*	to tell, to announce *ModE* foreboding
bold *n*	dwelling

bord *n*	board
bōs(u)m *m*	bosom
brand/brond *m*	fire-brand
a-brecan *5*	to break in, to assault
æt-bredan *3*	to withdraw, to release
bre(g)dan *I*	to weave
brēgd *m*	fear, terror
brego *m u*	leader, ruler
a-brēoðan *2*	to unsettle, to ruin
bringan/brengan, brōhte *I*	to bring
forð-bringan *3*	to produce; to fulfil
ge-broc *n*	fragment, wreckage
tō-brocen *pp*	in pieces *OE* brecan 'to break'
brōga *m an*	terror
brōðor *m r*	brother *Scr* bhrātri *B* брат
ge-brōðor *m r*	two or more brothers, brotherhood
burg/burh byrig *f root*	castle, city
burhware *f pl*	the inhabitants of a city
butere *f an*	butter
butu *num*	both, *OE* bā+twā
byld *3rd sg pres*	to make bold *OE* byldan
be-byr(i)gean *II*	to bury
ge-byri(g)an *I*	to happen *OS* gaburian
byrnan *I*	to burn
byrðen *f jō*	burden, weight
bysgod *adj*	busy

c

carlman *m root*	male, churl *OE* ceorl + man
ceaster *f*	castle; city *L* castrum
cēne *adj*	keen, fierce *OHG* kōni
ge-cēosan *2* gecoren	to choose, to elect; to approve, to agree
cī(e)gan *I*	to call, summon; to cry

cieran *I* cearde	to turn, go *G* kehren
ge-cierran *I*	to return, to convert
on-cierran *I*	to convert, to change, to corrupt
cīese/cȳse *m ja*	cheese *L* cāseus
cild *n s*	child
tō-clēofan *2*	to cleave asunder
cleopian/clypian *II onom*	to speak loudly, to call
cnapa/cnafa *m an*	boy
on-cnāwan *7*	to recognize, to perceive
cneoht/cniht *m*	boy, servant
cnihthād *m*	age between childhood and manhood
cōlan *I*	to cool down
ge-coren *adj/pp*	chosen, excellent *s* cēosan
costian *II*	to tempt; to try + *Gen/Acc*
cræft *m*	craft
ge-cringan *3*	to fall, to die
cūð *adj*	known, familiar *Gth* kunþs *ModE* uncouth *s* cunnan *pret-pres OE* Tables
culter *m*	coulter, dagger
cuman *4* c(w)ōm cumen	to come
be-cuman *4*	to arrive; to become
cunnian *II*	to prove, to inquire; + *Gen* to have experience
cwaci(g)an *II*	to shake *ModE* quake
a-cwellan *I* -cwealde	to kill, to destroy
cweðan *5*	to say, to speak
be-cweðan *5*	to say, reproach; bequeath, give by will
ge-cweðan *5*	to pronounce, to agree, to order
on-cweðan *5*	to reply, to respond; to attempt
wið-cweðan *5*	to reply; to contradict
cweartern *m*	< *L* carcer
cwide *m*	saying *s* cweðan
cyld/ceald *m*	coldness *L* gelidus
cyle *m*	cold, chill

cynehe(a)lm/kinehelm *m*	crown
cynerīce *n*	kingdom
cyning/cyng/cing *m*	king *OHG* kuning
cynn *n ja*	kin, sort, kind *L* genus *OHG* kuni
gecynde *adj*	natural; native
cypmann *m root*	merchant *OE* cēapian/cȳpan 'to buy' *G* kaufen
cyrice *f an*	church *Gr* kyryakos
ge-cyrran	*s* ge-cieran
on-cyrran	*s* on-cieran
cȳðð *f jō*	knowledge *s* cunnan *OE* Tables
(ge-)cȳðan *I*	to make known; to show *s* cunnan

D

dǣd *f*	deed
dæg *m*	day *L* dies
dægrǣd/~rēd *n*	dawn
dǣl *m i*	part *Gth* dails *B* дял *ModE* deal
dǣlan *I*	to divide, to share *ModE* deal
	Gth dailjan *G* teilen
dēad *adj*	dead
dēað *m*	death *Gth* dauþus
be-delfan *3*	to dig; to bury
ge-dēman *I*	to judge
dēop *adj*	deep *OS* diop
dēor *n*	animal *Gth* dius *Gr* theos *B* дух
deorfan *3*	to work
(ge)-deorf *n*	labour
be-diglian *II*	to hide, to cover, to conceal
diht/dyht *n*	an order, purpose *L* dictum
dōhtor *f r*	daughter *Scr* duhitri
dōm *m*	opinion, judgement
(ge)-dōn -dyden *irreg*	*s* dōn *OE* Tables
ge-dōn *pp*	accomplished

dorste *pret-pres*	*s* durran *OE* Tables
of-drǽd *adj*	terrified
an-drǽdan, on- *I*	to fear
on-drǽdan *7*	to dread, to be afraid
drēogan *2*	to work; to suffer *Gth* driugan
be-drīfan *1*	to compel, to force sb to do sth
drihten *m*	a ruler; Our Lord
drōflīc *adj*	sad, agitated
dulmuna ?	Greek war-ship
durre *pres subj*	*cf* durran *pret-pres* OE Tables
dyhtan	to arrange, to appoint
dyrstig *adj*	bold *cf* durran *pret-pres* OE Tables
dysegian *II*	to be foolish; to blaspheme

E

ēa *f* ēam	river
ēac *conj*	also, moreover *Gth* auk *G* auch
tō-eacan *adv/prep*	in addition to, beside(s)
eadig *adj*	happy; fortunate
ēalā *interj*	alas! o!
(e)ald *adj*	old
ealdor *n/f*	life
(e)aldorman *m root*	nobleman
eall *adj*	all
ealswā *adv*	also
ēam *m*	uncle
eard *m*	land; landing *s* erian
earfoðness *f jō*	labour, difficulty *G* Arbeit *B* работа
earh *adj*	cowardly
earm *m*	arm *L* armus
earm *adj*	poor *G* arm
ēastan *adv*	from the East
ēaðe *adj*	easy

ēaðmōd *adj*   humble

ēce *adj*   eternal

ēcelice *adv*   eternally

efstan *I*   to hurry

eft *adv*   again; afterwards

ege *m i*   fear

egl(i)an *I impers*   it grieves me *+ Dat*

ēhtan *I* ēhte   to pursue, to persecute

elðēodnyss *f jō*   foreignness

ellen *m/n*   courage, strength

ende *m ja*   end

ge-endian *II*   to finish

endebyrdness *f jō*   order

enge *adj*   narrow *G* eng

ēode *pt*   *s* gān *irreg OE* Tables

eorðe *f an*   earth *OS* erða

eorl *m*   earl

eorldōm *m*   the province/the dignity of an earl

erian *II*   to plough

F

faran *6*   to go; to fare

ge-faran *6*   to reach by going; to die; to fare

fæder *m r*   father *L* pater

fæg(e)n *adj*   glad

fæger *adj*   fair

fǣhð *f*   feud, hostility

fǣrlice *adv*   suddenly

fær-scēat *m*   garment

be-fæstan *I*   to fasten, to fix; to recommend

fæste *adv*   firmly

fæstlīc *adj*   firm

ge-fæstnian *II*   to fasten, to fix

ge-fēa *m an*	joy
feallan *7*	to fall
feawa *adj*	few *Gth* faus
fela/feala *adv*	many + *Gen G* viel *Gr* polys
ge-fellan *I*	*s* ge-fyllan
feld *m u*	field
feng *pt*	*s* fōn
feoh *n Gen* fēos	cattle; money; property *ModE* fee *L* pecus
feohtan *3*	to fight *G* fechten
ge-feoht *n*	battle
ge-feohtan *3*	to fight, to obtain by fighting
ge-fēon *5*	to be glad, to rejoice
fēond *m nd*	enemy, fiend *OE* fēon 'to hate'
feorh, fēores *m/n*	life, body, soul
ge-fēra *m an*	companion
fēran *I*	to go, travel; to set out
fers *n/m*	verse
fett *3rd p sg pres* <fēdan *I*	to feed
fierd/fyrd *f i*	troop, army force
on-findan *3*	to find out, to discover
firas *m pl ja*	people, *s* feorh
fisc *m*	fish *Gth* fisks *L* piscis
fiscere *m ja*	fisherman
flǣsclic *adj*	fleshly
flēogan *2*	to fly
flēon *2* flihst; flēah	to flee; to put to flight
a-flieman/-flyman *I*	to banish
ge-flieman *I caus*	to drive away
flōd *m/n u*	flood
flota *n an*	ship, sailor
flōwan *7* flēow	to flow
folc *n*	folk *L* plebs
folde *f an*	earth
folgian *II*	to follow + *Gen/Acc*

ge-fōn *7* -feng	to take, to seize, to catch
onfangen *p sg* on-fōn *7*	to take, to receive; to accept
under-fōn *7*	to receive
forhtfull *adj*	timid, fearful *G* Furcht
forhtian *II*	to be frightened, to tremble
fornēah *adv*	almost
forð *adv*	forth
forðan/forðon *conj*	because; that's why
forðǣm(ðe) *conj*	because
fōt *m root*	foot *L* pedis
fōtmǣl *m/n*	measure
fracod *adj*	bad
frǣcness/frecness *f jō*	danger, peril *G* frech
ge-fremman *I*	to accomplish
freoh/frēo *adj*	free *s* frēond
frēond *m nd*	friend *OE* gefrēon 'to love' *B* приятел
pl frīend/frȳnd	
friþ/fryþ *m/n*	peace *G* Friede
fruma *m an*	beginning
frumsceaft *f i*	origin, creation
frȳnd *pl*	*s* frēond
fugelere *m ja*	hunter of birds *ModE* foul *G* Vogel 'bird'
full *adj*	full *L* plenus *B* пълен
fulwiht *m/n/f i*	baptism
furðor *adv comp*	further
ge-fylce *n ja*	troop *s* fylg(e)an
fylg(e)an *I*	to follow
fyllan *I*	to fill
a-fyllan *I*	to fill up, to satisfy
ge-fyllan/-fellan *I*	to fill; to finish, to accomplish
fylstan *I*	to help
fȳr *n*	fire *Gr* pyro-
fyrmest *superl*	foremost, first
fyrst *m i*	period of time

G

gaderi(g)an *I*	to gather
gād-īsen *n*	goad iron
gafol *n*	tax; interest
gān *irreg*	*s OE* Tables
be-gān *irreg*	to go about; to surround, to occupy
gang *m*	way, road
gangan *7*	to go
be-gangan *7*	to go round/about
fore-ganga *m an*	fore-runner, predecessor
gār *m*	spear, arrow
gǣst/gāst *m*	spirit *ModE* ghost
ge *conj*	and, also;
gea *interj*	yea
geapscipe *m i*	craft, cunning, deceit
gēar *n*	year *G* Jahr *B* яре
gearelice *adv*	readily *OE* gearo 'ready'
gearwian *II*	to get ready, to prepare *s* gearelice
ge-glengan *I*	to embellish
ge-gān *irreg*	to pass over, to happen; to occupy
ge-gōdian *II*	to bestow goods, to enrich
genōg/genōh *adv/adj*	enough *G* genug
geong/giong *adj*	young *L* juvencus *B* юноша
georn *adj*	eager *G* gerne *ModE* yearn
geornfulle *adv*	eagerly
on-geotan/-gytan *5*	to perceive, to see, to consider *s* and-giet
gersuma *m an*	treasure
giddian *II*	to sing, to recite
a-giefan *5*	to restore, to give back
for-giefan/-gyfan *5*	to forgive
and-giet/ond-giet *n*	intellect *s* (on)-geotan
a-gietan *5*	to destroy
be-gietan *5*	to obtain, to acquire; to exercise

for-gietan/-gytan *5*	to forget
ofer-g(i)etan *5*	to forget, to neglect
gif *conj*	if
gifu/gyfu *f*	gift
gilpan *3*	to boast
gim(m) *m*	gem
an-gin *n*	beginning
gin *adj*	wide
on-ginnan *3*	to begin; to attempt
git/gyt/giet *adv*	yet
glæs *n*	glass
glēd *f i*	burning coal, gleed
gōd *adj*	good
godcund *adj*	divine
godspell *n ja*	gospel *OE* gōd+spell
gromhȳdig *adj*	hostile *OE* gram 'anger'
grētan *I*	to greet, to welcome
gristbitung *f*	gnashing of teeth
grund *m*	ground
be-grynian *II*	to ensnare
gryre *m i*	horror
guma *m an*	man *L* homo
gylp/gilp *m*	pride, boasting
gylt *m i*	guilt
gyrstandæg/gestrandæg *m*	yesterday *G* gestern
gyt *adv*	yet
on-gytan *5*	*s* on-geotan

H

hād *m*	person; sex; rank, state
hādor *adj*	bright
on-hādor *m/n*	serenity
hāl *adj*	whole

hālga *m an*	saint
hǣle *f an*	health
halettan *I*	to greet
Hǣlend *m nd*	The Saviour *OE* hǣlan 'to heal'
hæleð *m*	warrior, hero
hālig *adj*	holy *G* heilig
ge-hālgian *II*	to consecrate, to initiate, to ordain
hām *m*	home *Gth* heims *G* Heim
hǣman *I*	to make love to
hand/hond *f u*	hand; power, control
gehæp *adj*	suitable, convenient
hara *m an*	hare
hās *adj*	hoarse
hāt *adj*	hot
hātan *7* hēt	to be called
ge-hātan *7/I* hēt/hatte	to call, to command; to promise
hǣte *f an*	heat
hǣðen *adj/noun*	heathen *Gth* haiþno
hēah *adj/adv*	high *s OE* Tables
heahðu *f*	height
(ge)-healdan *7*	to hold
healf *f*	half *G* halbe
heall *f*	hall
hēan *adj*	mean, low, humble
hēap *m*	heap
heard(lic) *adj*	hard; brave
hearm *m*	injury, grief, harm
hearpa *m an*	harp-player
hearpe *f an*	harp
for-hēawan *7*	to hew, to cut in pieces
a-hebban *6* ahōf ahafen	lifted up; exalted
be-hēfe *adj*	useful
ge-hēgan *I*	to perform, to hold
hehst/hyhst *superl*	*s* hēah

(up)-heofon *m*	heaven(s) *Gth* himins *OHG* himil
heonon *adv*	from here
heord *f*	herd
heort *m*	hart, stag
heorte *f an*	heart *Gth* hairto *L* cor,-dis
here *m ja* hergas	army *Gth* harjis
hereness *f jō*	praise *OE* herian
hergan *I*	to praise
hergian *II*	to harry, to plunder
hid *f*	a hide of land
hider *adv*	hither
ge-hīeran/hyran/hēran *I*	to hear
hierde *m ja*	shepherd
hīersumian/hyrsumian *II*	to obey
hīg *n ja*	hay
hild *f poet*	war, battle
hīrēd *m*	household; retainers *G* Heirath
hiwung *f*	form; pretence
hlāf *m*	bread, loaf *OHG* hlaiba
hlāford *m*	lord *EOE* hlāf+weard
ge-hlǣg *n*	scorn
for-hogan *I*	to neglect, to despise, to accuse
homa/hama *m an*	covering
hraðe/hræðe *adv*	soon, quickly *ModE* rather
hrædlice *adv*	quickly *s* hraðe/hræðe
hrēam *m*	shouting
hrēoh *adj*	rough
hrēohness *f jō*	roughness
hū *adv*	how
hund *m*	hound
hunta *m an*	hunter
huntian *II*	to hunt
huntnoð *m*	hunting
huru *adv*	at least, at any rate, especially

hūs *n*	house
hwæþere *adv*	yet, still
hwǣte *m ja*	wheat
ge-hwæþre *pron*	both; either
hwæthwegu *pron*	whatever
hweorfan *3*	to turn
ge-hwierfan *3*	to change
hwīl *f*	time *ModE* while *G* Weile
hwīlum/hwīlon *adv*	at times, sometimes *OE* hwīl *Dat pl*
hwonne *adv*	when
hwonon *adv*	from where
(ge)-hwyrfan *I*	to (re)turn, to depart; to die
be-hȳdan *I*	to hide
hyht *m*	hope

I

īdel *adj*	empty; useless, idle
iernan/yrnan *3*	to run
iermðu/yrmþu *f*	poverty *s* earm
æt-īewan/-ȳwan *I* -ēowde	to show, reveal; to appear *в* явен
ilca *adj*	same
innan/innon *adv*	inside
intinga *m an*	cause, affair
inwit *n ja*	conscience
īren/īsen *n*	iron *Gth* eisarn *G* Eisen
iugian *II*	to yoke
ge-iukod *pp*	harnessed *ModE* yoke

L

ge-læccan -læhte *I*	to catch
lǣcedōm *m*	cure *ModE* leech
(a)-lǣdan *I*	to lead *G* leiten

agēn-lǣdan *I*	to lead back
ge-lǣdan *I*	to lead, to bring forth
on-be-lǣden *adj*	inflicted, involved
lāf *f*	what is left, remains; inheritance
lǣfan *I*	to leave *G* bleiben
lagu *m*	water, sea
land/lond *n*	land
land-rīce *n ja*	territory
lang/long *adj*	long
lange/longe *adv*	a long time; far
langsum *adj*	long, long-enduring
lār *f*	knowledge, lore
(ge)-lǣran *I*	to teach *Gth* laisjan *G* lehren *s* lār
ge-lǣred *pp*	learned, educated
lāreoþ *m*	teacher
lāreow/lǣreow *m wa*	teacher *s* lār+þēow
lǣs *f wō*	pasture
ge-lǣstan *I*	to accomplish, to accompany; to last
a-lǣtan/-lētan *7*	to leave, to let go
for-lǣtan/-lētan *7*	to permit; to forsake, abandon
an-for-lǣtan *7*	to leave alone, to forsake
for-lǣtness *f jō*	loss, departure
ge-lēafa *m an*	belief *G* Glaube
ge-leaffull *adj*	believing, full of faith
lēas *adj*	free; futile *Gth* laus 'empty'
leden *adj*	Latin
lēod *f*	people
(ge)-lēof *adj*	dear, beloved
leofian/lifian *II*	to live
lēoht/līht *n*	light *OS* lioht
ge-leornad *pp/adj*	educated *s* (ge)-leornian
leornere *m ja*	learner, learned
(ge)-leornian *II*	to learn, to inquire
for-lēosan *2*	to lose; to let go

lēoð *n*	song, poem
libban *III*	to live
a-libban *III*	to survive
līc *n*	body *Gth* leik *G* Leiche
licgan *5*	to lie *G* liegen *OS* liggian
lician/lycian *II*	to like *+ Dat*
līf *n*	life
lifian *II*	to live
līg *m*	flame
lim *n*	limb
be-limpan *3*	to concern, to belong
ge-limpan *3*	to happen
ge-limplic *adj*	suitable; fatal, ordered by fate
lind *f*	(things made of) lime-tree, shield
līð *3rd sg pres*	*s* licgan
loca *m an*	lock, shed; a lock of wool
bi-locen *pp*	locked, shut up *OE* bi-lūcan 'to lock'
lōcian *II*	to look
lof *m/n*	praise, glory
ge-lome *adv*	often
ge-lomlician *II*	to happen frequently
on-lūcan *2* -lēac	to open (unlock), to disclose
lufian *II*	to love
lufu *f ō/an*	love
be-lumpe *pt subj*	*s* be-limpan
lustlice *adv*	with pleasure, gladly
lutian *II*	to hide
ge-lyfan/-līefan/-lēfan *I*	to believe
ge-lȳfed *pp*	advanced in age
lyft *m/f i*	air *G* Luft
lystan *I*	to cause pleasure/desire *+ Dat ModE* lust
lȳtel *adj*	little *OS* luttil

M

macian *II*	to make
mægen *n*	strength; virtue
mægester *m*	master *L* magister
mǣl *f*	speech, talk
ge-mǣlan/-melan *I*	to speak, to announce
tō-mǣldan *I*	to announce
man/mon *m root*	man
(ge)-manian *II*	to remind; to instigate
manig/monig *adv*	many, much
manncynn *n ja*	mankind
manslyht *m i*	manslaughter
mā(ra) māre *comp*	*s* micel
mǣre *adj*	excellent, famous *OS* māri
mæsse *f an*	mass, a service of the church *L* missa
mǣst *superl*	*s* micel
mæte/mete *m i*	food *ModE* meat
max/masc *n*	mesh, net
meaht(on)	*s* magan *pret-pres*
mearh mēare *m*	horse
mēce *m ja*	sword *OS* māki
med-mycel *adj*	moderate, not great
melkan *3*	to milk
meodo/medu *m/n*	mead *B* мед
meotud *m*	fate; creator *s* ge-met *OE* metan 'to measure'
mer(i)gen/marn *m ja*	morning
ge-met *n*	space; measure
mētan *I*	to meet *Gth* gamōtjan
ge-mētan *I*	to find; to meet with
micel/mycel *adj*	great, big; much; many
middan-(g)eard *m u*	the middle dwelling: the Earth *s* eard
midwinter *m u*	Christmas
milde *adj*	mild, gentle

mildheortnis *f jō*	mercy, compassion *L* misericordia
milts *f jō*	mercy
mirce *adj*	dark, murky
mislic *adj*	various, diverse; irregular
mōdig *adj*	proud
molde *f an*	mould, dust
ge-molsnan *II*	to corrupt, to decay
ge-monig-fealdian *II*	to multiply *ModE* manifold
mōnaþ *m þ*	month, *OE* mōn 'moon' *L* mensis *B* месец
morgen *m ja*	*s* mer(i)gen
mōstan *pt pl*	*s* mōtan *pret-pres*
mōtan *pret-pres*	must
ge-munan *I*	to remember, to consider
munec/monuc *m*	monk *L* monachus
mūð *m*	mouth *Gth* munþs *G* Mund
ge-mynd *n ja/f i*	mind, memory
mynetere *m ja*	money-dealer
myn(e)gian *II*	to recall + *Acc/Gen*; to remind
mynster *m*	minster *L* monasterium

N

nā *neg particle*	no
nǣfre *adv*	never
nama *m an*	name
nān *neg*	none *OE* ne+ān
nānwuht *neg pron*	nothing
nǣnig *neg pron*	no *OE* ne+ǣnig
ne *neg particle*	
nēah *adj*	near
nea(h)lǣcan *I*	to approach
nēat *n*	cow, beast
nē(o)d *f i*	need *OS* niud
nīede/nēde *adv*	of necessity

nēdðearf *f*	necessity
nemnan *I*	to name
nett *n*	net
nīehsta/nexta *superl*	*s* nēah
niht *f i*	night *G* Nacht *L* noctis *B* нощ
niman *4*	to take *G* nehmen
a-niman *4*	to take away
ge-niman *4*	to take away; to obtain
nīð *m*	envy *Gth* neiþ *G* Neid
nymðe *conj*	unless, except
nōht/nāwiht/nāuht *pron*	nothing
norðan *adv*	from the North
nū *adv*	now
tō-ge-nȳdd *adj*	compelled *OE* ge-nȳdan 'to compel'
nȳdling/nīedling *m*	slave
nytlic *adj*	useful
nytt *f jō/adj*	use(ful)

O

oft *adv*	often
oft-rade *adj*	frequent, 'ready many times'
ongēan *adv*	opposite
on-sine *adj*	visible
ord *m*	(point of) weapon, beginning
orleg/orlæg *n*	fate
oð/oððæt *conj*	until
oððe *conj*	or
ōðer *adj*	other; second *Gth* anþar *G* anderer
oxa *m an*	ox
oxanhyrde *m ja*	ox-herd

P

plagian *II*	to play
pund *n*	pound

R

rā *m an*	roebuck
ge-rād *n*	consideration, reason, wisdom
rǣdan *7*	to read
raðe *adv*	*s.* hraðe
ge-rǣcan *I*	to reach, to obtain
a-rǣran/a-rēran *I*	to raise; to rear *OE* rīsan 'to rise'
rǣðe/rēðe *adj*	fierce, savage
rǣge *f an*	roe
(ge)-recc(e)an re(a)hte *I*	to stretch; to explain, to translate
ge-rēfa *an*	bailiff *ModE* sheriff
re(g)nian *II*	to arrange
ge-reord *f/n*	language
reowlic *adj*	fierce, cruel
rīce *n ja*	rule, power; kingdom *G* Reich
rīcsian/rīxian *II*	to rule, to govern *s* rīce
rīdan *1*	to ride
riht *adj*	straight, direct, right *OS* reht
(a)-rīman *I*	to count
ripan *1*	to reap
a-rīsan *1*	to arise; to originate
rūm *adj*	spacious, roomy
rūmmōd *adj*	of liberal mind *s* rūm+*OE* mōd 'mind, mood'

S

sāwan *7* sē(o)w	to sow
sǣ *m/f i*	sea *Gth* saiws

on-sǣgan *I*	to cause to sink, to drown
ge-sǣlig *adj*	happy, fortunate
ge-samnian/-somnian *II*	to gather, to assemble *G* zusamen
sang/song *m*	song
sārlic *adj*	sad, sorry
sāwol *f*	soul
sc(e)acan/scæcen *6*	to shake
a-sc(e)acan *6*	to shake off, to remove
ge-sceaft *f/n i*	creation, creature *OE* scieppan 'to create'
sc(e)amu/scome *f*	shame *OS* skama
scēap *n*	sheep
scēaphyrde *m ja*	shepherd
for-sceapung *f*	crime, disaster
scēar *m old s*	plough-share *ModE* shears *G* Schere
scearn *n*	dung
scearp *adj*	sharp, penetrating *OS* skarp
sceatt *m*	treasure *G* Schatz
scēawian *II*	to show, to expose
scēoh scēos *m*	shoe
sceolon *pres pl*	*s* sculan *pret-pres OE* Tables
sc(e)ōtan *2*	to shoot
þurh-sc(e)ōtan *2*	to pierce
scīnan *1*	to shine
scip *n*	ship *Gth/Icel* skip
scop *m*	poet *OE* scieppan 'to create'
scræf *n*	cavern, grave
(ge)-scrīdan/-scrȳdan *I*	to clothe *ModE* shroud
scrȳt *3rd sg pres*	*s* scrīdan
scyldburh/scild- *f root*	a line of shields, a battle array
scypen *f*	cow-shed
Scyppend *m nd*	Creator *OE* scieppan 'to create'
a-scyrian/-scirian *II*	to sever, to separate *ModE* share
scȳt *3rd sg pres*	*s* scēotan
sealtere *m ja*	salter

searo *n wa*	cunning, deceit *OHG* saro
(ge)-sēc(e)an *I*	to seek, to inquire; to persecute
secgan, sæ(í)de *III*	to say
sefa *m an*	mind
self/seolf/sylf *pron*	self, own; same
sellan, sealde *I*	to give *Gth* saljan *ModE* sell
ge-sellan *I*	to give; to give up, betray; to sell
sēlra *adj suppl comp*	better *s* gōd
ge-sēman *I*	to compose; to reconcile; to make peace with
sendan *I*	to send
on-sendan *I*	to send off; to send forth
(ge)-sēon *5* gesegen	to see
for-sēon *5*	to despise
settan *I*	to set; to settle *Gth* satjan
ge-settan *I*	to occupy
sibb *f jō*	peace, relationship *Gth* sibja *ModE* sibling
(a)-singan *3*	to sing, to recite
sittan *5*	to sit
ge-sittan *5*	to sit down; to settle; to occupy
ymb-sittan *5*	to besiege
sīð *m*	journey; time
sīðfæt *m/n*	journey; course, path
sīðian *II*	to travel
sie *subj*	*s* bēon *irreg OE* Tables
sige *m i (old s)*	victory *G* Siege
sið(ðan)/syððan *adv/conj*	later, since *G* seitdem
slāw *adj*	slow
slǣp *m*	sleep
slǣpan *7*	to sleep
on-slǣpan *I*	to fall asleep
slēan *6* slōh geslægen	to strike, to slay *G* schlagen
ge-slēan *6* geslegen	to kill
þurh-slēan *6*	to strke through

of-slægen *pp/adj*	*s* slēan
slege *m i*	blow, murder
for-slegen *adj*	slain
smēagan *I*	to consider
þurh-smēagan *I* -smeade	to search through, to examine
þurh-slȳhð *3rd sg pres*	*s* slēan
smilte/smylte/smolte	quiet(ly), calm(ly)
tō-smyltan *I*	to appease
smyltnes *f jō*	tranquility, silence
snottre *adj*	clever
sōna *adv*	soon
sōð *adj*	true *ME* for sooth
sōðe/sōðlice *adv*	truly
sparian *II*	to spare, to have mercy
spell *n*	story; instructive talk, saying
a-spēon *pp*	enticed, secretly introduced
sprǣc *f i*	speech, language
sprǣdan *I*	to spread
sprecan *5*	to speak
sprengan *I caus*	to strew, sprinkle; *OE* springan 'to spring'
standan *6* stōd	to stand
a-standan *6*	to stand up, to rise; to insist
ge-staðelian *II*	to found, establish; to strengthen
stæð *n*	bank, shore
stearc *adj*	strong, vehement *G* stark
stedefæste *adj*	steadfast
stellan *I*	to give a place to; to rush
ste(o)de *m i*	place
steorra *m an*	star *G* Stern *Gr* aster
stēorrēðra *m an*	captain, skipper *ModE* to steer
a-stīgan *1*	to go, climb, ascend
of-stikian *II*	to stab *G* abstechen
ge-stillan *I*	to make still, quiet; to rest
stōw *f wō*	place

strang *adj* strengra	strong
stranglice *adv*	strongly
stregdan *I*	to strew, to scatter
strengð *f*	strength
(ge)-strēonan/-strȳnan *I*	to gain, to obtain *OS* gistriuni 'wealth'
geond-styrian *II*	to agitate
geond-styred *pp/adj*	agitated
on-styrian *II*	to stir, to excite
ge-sund *adj*	healthy *G* gesund
sunnandæg *m*	Sunday
sunne *f an*	sun
sunu *m u/an*	son
sūð *adj*	south(ern)
sūðan *adv*	from the South
swā *adv*	so; as
and-swarian *II*	to answer
and-swaru *f*	answer
sweltan *3*	to die
swefn *n*	dream, sleep
for-swelgan *3*	to swallow up, devour
ge-swencan *I*	to disturb; to oppress; to agitate
swēor/sweohur *m r*	father-in-law *B* свекър
ge-swerian *6* -swōr	to take an oath, to swear
sweotol/sweotelic *adj*	clear, plain
swica *m an*	deceiver
be-swīcan *1*	to deceive, to entice, to betray
swicdōm *m*	deceit
swilc/swylc *pron*	such
ge-swinc *n i*	labour, torment
swingel *f*	stroke, chastisement
be-swingan *3*	to scourge, to beat
swinsung *f*	melody *OE* swinsian 'to sound'
swiðe/swyðe *adv*	very, exceedingly
swurd/sweord *n*	sword

for-sȳhð *3rd p sg pres*	*s* for-sēon
ge-sȳhð *f*	sight, vision
sūl *f/m root*	plough
sȳl *s* sūl	
symbel *n*	feast
sȳn *poss pron*	one's own *s OE* Tables
synn *f jō*	sin
synlic *adj*	sinful

T

tǣcean *I*	to teach
be-tǣcan *I*	to show; to put in trust
tāc(e)n *n*	token, sign *Gth* taikns *G* zeichen
teolian *II*	*s* tilian
te(o)llan *I*	to tell
un-a-teallendlic *adj*	innumerable
tēona *m an*	damage, harm *OS* tiono
tīberness *f jō*	animal sacrifice
tīd *f i*	time *ModE* tide *G* Zeit
ge-tīðian *II*	to grant, to allow
ge-tihtan *I*	to urge, to persuade
ge-timbrian/-tymbrian *II*	to build
ge-tryman *I*	to strengthen; to establish; to confirm
ge-tyhtan *I*	to educate
tilgan/tilian *II*	to strive, to toil, to obtain
tīma *m an*	time
tō *adv*	too
tōþ *m root*	tooth *Gth* tunþus *L* dens,-tis
tōdæg *adv*	today
ge-truma *m an*	troop
trym/trem *m*	step
ge-trȳwa *adj*	true, faithful
tūn *m*	town

tō-twǣman *I*	to cut in two, to divide, to separate
tweowa *adv*	twice
twifeald *adj*	twofold

Þ/Ð

þā *adv/conj*	then; when
þanan/þonan *adv*	thence
þanne/þonne/þænne *adv*	then; when
þǣr *adv*	there
þǣrtō *adv*	thereto
þe *rel particle*	
þēah *conj*	though *Gth* þauh
þēahhwæþere *conj*	nevertheless
þearf *f*	need *cf* þurfan *pret-pres* OE Tables
þearf *pres sg*	*cf* þurfan *pret-pres* OE Tables
þearfend *adj*	needy *cf* þurfan *pret-pres*
þearfa *adj*	needy, poor
þearle *adv*	severely, hard
þearlic *adj*	severe
þēaw *m wa*	custom, virtue
þeg(e)n/þægn *m*	servant; officer; retainer
þe(g)nung *f*	service
ge-þencean *I* -þōhte	to think; to remember, to consider
þēod *f*	nation *Gth* þiuda *G* deutsch
tō-ge-þēodan *I*	to put together
under-þēodan *I*	to subject
þēoden *m*	chief (of a tribe), ruler
þēodscipe *m i*	people; fellowship
þēof *m*	thief
þēostru/þīestru/þ̄ystru *f*	darkness *OS* thiustria
þēostre/þīestre/þ̄ystre *adj*	dark
a-ðēostrian aðistrod *II*	to grow dark
þēow *m wa*	servant *Gth* þius

þī/þȳ *pron*   *s OE* Tables

þider *adv*   thither, whither

ge-þingan *I*   to assemble

ge-þoht *m/n*   thought *s* ge-þencean

þōlian *II*   to suffer, to endure

þriwa *adv*   three times

þrymm *m ja*   power, glory

þryste *adj*   daring

þus *adv*   thus

ge-þwærness *f jō*   agreement

þyslic *adj*   suitable

þyncan *I* þūhte   to seem, to appear *+ Dat*

þȳwan *I*   to urge

U

ufan *adv*   above

unablinnendlice *adv*   unceasingly

ge-unclænsian *II*   to pollute; to corrupt

unforsceadwodlice *adv*   unawares *OE* sceadu 'shade'

ungecyndelic(e) *adj/adv*   unnatural(ly)

ungederod *adj*   unhurt

ungelæred *pp/adj*   untaught *s* læran

ungelimp *n/m*   misfortune

ungetīmu *f*   bad time, mishap

unnytt *adj*   useless

unriht *n*   wrong, injustice

unscennan *I*   to unyoke

unþanc *m*   displeasure, anger *s* þanc

unweorð *adj*   not worthy

unwrēst/-wrǣst *adj*   weak, poor, miserable

ūser *poss pron*   our

ūt *adj* ūtera *comp*   utter

uton *interj*   let's

ge-ūðe *pt*   *cf* (ge)unnan *pret-pres* OE Tables

W

wacian *II*   to stay awake
wæl *n*   (sum total of) slain
wæl-sliht *m*   slaughter *s* slēan
wæll *adv*   well
ge-wæmmodlice *adv*   corruptly OE wam 'crime'
wǣp(e)n *n*   weapon
wæstmian *II*   to grow
wāt *pres sg*   *s* witan *pret-pres* OE Tables
(ge)-wæterian *II*   to give water, to water OE wæter
weall *m*   wall
ge-w(e)ald *m/n*   power G Gewalt
weard *m*   guardian
and-weard *adj*   present
fore-we(a)rd/-wyrd *adj*   forward, early
w(e)aroð *m*   shore
we(a)xan *I*   to grow, to wax G wachsen
webbian *II*   to weave; to contrive
weg *m*   way
for-wegan *5*   to kill
wela/weola *m an*   wealth
weleg/welig *adj*   rich
wēn *f i*   thought, idea, hope
wēnan *I*   to think, to hope
wendan *I*   to turn, to go
on-wendan *I*   to turn away, to avert, to divert
weorc *n*   work OS werk
we(o)rod wered *n*   troop *s* wer
tō-weorpan *3*   to throw away, to scatter; to overthrow
ge-weorðan *I*   to deserve *s* wyrð/weorð
(ge)-weorðan *3*   to become, to happen G werden B въртя

for-weorðan *3*	to perish
weorðlic *adj*	valuable, worthy
weoruldhād *m*	secular condition *s* woruld
wēpendlic *adj*	lamentable
wer *m*	man *L* vir
werscipe *m i*	married state
wesan *irreg*	to be, being
westan *adv*	from the West
a-wēstan *I*	to lay waste, to destroy
wēsten *m/n/f*	desert
wicg *n ja poet*	steed
for-wiernan/-wyrnan *I*	to refuse, to prevent
wīf *n*	wife *G* Weib
wīg *n*	fight
wiga *m an*	one who fights
wildēor *m*	*s* dēor
ge-wilni(g)an *II*	to wish, to expect
wimman *m root*	woman *OE* wīf+man
wine *m i*	friend
winedrihten *m*	patron *s* wine+drihten
ge-winn *n*	fight, battle
winnan *3*	to fight, to win
ge-winnan *3*	to capture
wīs *adj*	wise *G* weise
wīse *f an*	way, method *OHG* wisa *G* Weise
wistest *2nd p sg pt*	*s* witan *pret-pres*
wita *m an*	a person who has knowledge *s* witan
ge-wītan *1*	to turn/go away; to see; to understand
æt-wītan *1*	to reproach, to blame
wīte *n ja*	punishment, torment
witodlice *adv*	indeed, truly
wiðūtan *adv*	outside
wlanc/wlonc *adj*	proud
wlite *m i*	face

wlitig *adj*	beautiful
for-worden *adj*	perished *s* forweorðan
wōhdǣd *f i*	a wicked deed *ModE* woe
wolc(e)n *n*	cloud *G* Volk
wōlic *adj*	wrong, perverse, *s* wōhdǣd
wōness *f jō*	perversity *s* wōhdǣd
wōp *m*	crying *cf* wēpan 'to weep'
wordhord *m/n*	'word hoard' *G* Wortschatz
worldrīce *adj*	with worldly power/wealth
woruld/weorold *f i*	world *OS* werold
wor(u)ldlīc *adj*	worldly
(ge)-wrecan *5*	to press, to punish, to take revenge
ofer-wrēon/-wrogen *1/5*	to cover, to conceal
ge-writ *n*	sth written
a-wrītan *1*	to write down, describe; carve
wrōht *f/m*	accusation, slander
wudu *m u*	wood
wuldor *n*	glory
wunian *II*	to dwell *G* wohnen
a-wunian *II*	to remain, to abide
wur-	*s* wyr-/weor-
wurðscipe *m i*	worship *s* wyrð/weorð
wyrpan *3*	*s* weorpan
wynsumlic *adj*	winsom, pleasant
wyr-	*s* weor-, wur-
wyrc(e)an *I* worhte	to work *s* weorc
ge-wyrc(e)an *I* -wrohte	to work; to make
ge-an-wyrde *adj*	devoted, ordained *s* an-weard
wyrd *f i*	what happens, chance, fate *s* weorðan
wyrhta *m an*	worker *s* wyrc(e)an *ModE* Wright
wyrs, wyrst *suppl comp*	*s* ȳfel
wyrð/weorð *n/adj*	value(able), worth(y)
ge-wyslice *adv*	certainly

Y

ȳfel *adj*	evil, bad *Gth* ubils
ge-ȳfelian *II*	to injure; to become ill
ylce/ilce *adv*	in the same way
yldest *superl*	*s* eald
yldo/ildo *f*	age
yrmðu *f*	poverty, misery *OHG* armida *s* earm
yrðling *m*	earthling, ploughman *s* eorðe
ȳst *f i*	storm
ȳð *f jō*	wave *OHG* unda *OS* ūðia
ȳð/īeð *adv comp*	*s* ēaðe

MIDDLE ENGLISH TEXTS

A Parable

A homily written in the South-east before 1150.

    Hit ʒelamp Þ an rice king wes, strang 7 mihti. His land gelest wide 7 side, his folc was swiðe ærfeðtelle, his underðeoden ʒewer on his cynerice wuneden. Ða befel hit swa Þ him a þance befell to underʒeite wa an alle his cynerice **him were frend** oðer fend, hold oðer fa. 7 he **nam him to rede** Þ

5 heom wolde ʒearceon anæ grate laðienge. 7 þider ʒeclepien all his underþeod Þ hi bi ene fece to his curt berie come sceolde 7 sette ænne deʒie; Þ hi alle be þe latst to þa deʒie þer were. Ac þis ʒesceod he hadde isett bitweone frend 7 fend. Þ þan hi come mistlice to berie, ʒef he frend were, me hine sceolde derewurðlice forð clepien 7 do hine wasse 7 ʒiefe him his formemete, Þ **him**

10 **to lang ne þuhte** to abiden of se laford to þe none inn come. Gief he fend were, me sceolden anon **eter gat** ʒemete mid gode repples 7 stiarne swepen 7 stiarne hine besie 7 binde him hand 7 fett 7 do hine in to þiesternesse; 7 þer abide of all his ʒeferen were ʒegadered, Þ hi alle clone simle belocen were. Ða sende se king his ærndraches of fif ceðen to alle his under þeoden to ʒelaðie

15 þis folc **hwet bute** icome sum cofer sum later sum frend sum fend. 7 was idon bi ham al swa ær cweðe we Þ isett was. Ða hit þer to com Þ se hlaford in to þar halle come mid his dierewurð ʒeferede mid ærlen 7 aldren, mid cnihten, mid þeinen. Ða cweþ se hlaford to his: 'Ær þann we mid ure frienden to þe mete go, scewie we þes uncoðe mæn ur ʒefo.' Ða hi to for him come, þa wente he

20 hin to ham 7 þus cweð: 'Unwraste man, wat lacede ʒeu an alle mire rice þat ʒie hatrede 7 widerwardnesse aʒenes me ʒe wine sceolde, 7 to mine fa ʒebugon? Swa ibruce ic mine rice ne scule ʒie mine mete ibite, ac scule þa þe hit mid mire lufe ʒearnede.' Ða þis was isegd, þa were cofe abruden into þesternesse þe hi sturfe. 7 se hlaford **nam wiðinne** to **is** frenden 7 et 7 dranc

25 7 macede hine wel bliðe mid his 7 þer hi hadden brad 7 win 7 vii sonden.

    Nu gode menn, understandeð þis bispel. Þes king is ure hlaford almihti god þe is king ofer alle kingen 7 hlaford ofer alle hlaforde.

Phrases

eter gat = at þere gat 'at the gate'   **is** = his

him to lang ne þuhte 'it didn't seem too long'   **nam him to rede** 'decided'

him were frend 'was a friend to him'   **nam wiðinne '**went in'

hwet bute 'without delay'

Discussion topics

1. Give examples of: **a)** inherited OE diphthongs; **b)** new diphthongs;

    c) monophthongised ME diphthongs.

2. Give examples of reduced inflections.

3. Analyse plural noun forms. Compare to Old and Modern English.

Poema Morale

A powerful poem of religious warning dating from c 1170. Treats the consequences of wrongdoing and appeals for a pious life. Southwestern dialect.

> Ich am nu elder þan ich was a wintre 7 a lore.
>
> Ich wealde more þan **idude** mi wit oh to be more
>
> To longe ich habbe child iben a worde 7 a dade.
>
> þeih **ibie** a winter eald to iung ich am on rade.
>
> 5   Vnnet lif ich habbe ilad 7 ȝiet **me þincheð ilade**
>
> þan **ibiþenche** me þar on wel sore **ime** adrade.
>
> Mast al ich habbe idon is idelnesse 7 chilce.
>
> Wel late ich habbe me biþoht bute me god do milce.
>
> Fele idel word ich habbe ispeken seðen ich speken cuðe.
>
> 10   7 fele ȝeunge dade idon þe **me ofðinkeð** nuðe.
>
> Alto lome ich habbe igult a werke 7 a worde.
>
> Alto muchel ic habbe ispend to litel ileid on horde.
>
> Mast al þat **me likede** ar nu hit me mislicað.
>
> þe muchel folȝeð his iwil him selfen he biswicað.
>
> 15   Ich mihte habben bet idon. Hadde ich þo iselðe
>
> Nu ich wolde ac **ine** mai for elde 7 for unhalðe.

Elde me is bistolen on ar ich hit **iwiste**

Ne mai ich isien bifore me for smeche ne for miste.

Arȝe we beð to don god to juel al to þriste

20   More eie stondeð man of man þan him do of criste.

Þe wel ne deð þe hwile he mai wel ofte **hit sal him rewen**.

þan alle men sulle ripen þat hie ar sewen.

Do al to gode þat he muȝe ech þe hwile he beð aliue.

Ne lipne **noman** to muchel to childe ne to wiue.

25   Þe þe him selfe forȝiet for wiue oðer for childe

He sal cumen on euel stede bute him god be milde.

Sende god biforen him man þe hwile he mai to heuene

For betre is on almesse biforen þan ben after seuene.

  Ne bie þe leuere þan þe self ne þi maei ne þi mowe

30   Sot is þe is oðer mannes frend betere þan his owen.

Ne hopie wif to hire were ne were to his wiue

Be for him self afric man þe hwile he beð aliue.

Wis þe him selue biðencheð þe hwile he mot libben

For sone willeð him forȝiete þe fremde 7 þe sibbe

35   þe wel ne doð þe hwile he mai ne sal he þan he wolde.

For manimannes sore iswinc habbeð ofte unholde.

Ne solde noman don a furst ne laten wel to done

For maniman bihoteð wel þat hi forȝieteð sone.

Þe man þe wile siker ben to habben godes blisse.

40   Do wel him self þe hwile he mai þanne haueð **hes** mid iwisse.

Þe richemen weneð siker ben þurch wallen 7 thurh dichen.

He deð his aihte an siker stede þe hit sent to heueriche.

For þarf he ben ofdrad of fure ne of þieue.

Þar ne mai hit him binime þe loðe ne þe lieue.

45   Þar ne þarf he habben care of here ne of ȝielde

Þider we sendeð 7 ec bereð to litel 7 to selde.

Þider we solden drawen 7 don wel ofte 7 ilome.

For þar ne sal me us naht binime mid wrongwise dome.

Þider we solde ȝierne drawen wolde ȝie me ileuen.

50   For ne mai hit us binime no king ne no syrreue.

            Al þat beste þat we habbeð her þider we solde sende.

            For þar we mihte finden eft. 7 habben abuten ende.

            Se þe her doþ ani god forto haben godes ore.

            Al he hit sal eft finde þar 7 hundredfealde more.

Phrases

hes 'it'	**ine** = i ne
hit sal him rewen 'he'll rue it'	**ime** = i me
ibie = bie	**me likede** 'I liked'
ibiþenche = i biþenche	**me ofðinkeð** 'it disgusts me'
idude = i dude	**me þincheð** 'it seems to me'
ilade = i lade	**ne bie þe leuere** 'shouldn't be dearer to you'
iwiste = i wiste	**noman** = no man

Discussion topics

1. Mark all long vowels judging by their reflexes in Modern English and give reasons why they should be long.

2. Make a list of past participles and compare with their Modern English equivalents.

3. Describe the function of *do* in (20) *þan him do of criste.*

Sawles Warde

A homiletic prose allegory from the late 12th c., Western dialect.

            Ure Lauerd i þe godspel techeð us þurh a bisne hu we ahen wearliche to

            biwiten us seoluen wið þe unwiht of helle ant wið his wrenches. 'ȝef þes

            lauerd wiste,' he seið, 'hwenne ant hwuch time þe þeof walde cume to his

            hus, he walde wakien, ne **nalde** he nawt þolien þe þeof **forte** breoken hire.'

5   Ðis hus þe ure Lauerd spekeð of is seolf þe mon; inwið, þe monnes wit i þis

            hus is þe huse-lauerd, ant te fulitohe wif mei beon Wil ihaten. Ðet ga þe hus

            efter hire, ha diht hit al to wundre, bute Wit ase lauerd chasti hire þe betere,

            ant beneome hire muchel of þet ha walde; and tah walde al hire hird folhin

            hire oueral, ȝef Wit ne forbude ham, for alle hit beoð untohene ant rechelese

10 hinen, bute ȝef he ham rihte. Ant hwucche beoð þeos hinen? Summe beoð
    wiðvten ant summe wiðinnen. Ðeo wiþvten beoð þe monnes fif wittes - sihðe
    ant herunge, smechunge ant smeallunge, ant euch limes felunge. Ðeos beoð
    hinen vnder Wit, as under huse-lauerd, ant hwer se he is ȝemeles, **nis** hare
    nan þe ne feareð ofte untoheliche ant gulteð ilome, oðer i fol semblant oder
15 in vuel dede.

    Inwið beoð his hinen in se moni mislich þonc to cwemen wel þe husewif
    aȝein Godes wille, ant swerieð sometreadliche þet efter hire hit schal gan.
    Þah we hit ne here nawt, we mahen felen hare nurð ant hare untohe bere,
    aþet Wit cume forð ant ba wið eie ant wið luue tuhte ham þe betere. Ne bið
20 neauer his hus for þeos hinen wel iwist, for hwon þet he slepe oðer ohwider
    fare from hame - þet is hwen mon forȝet his wit ant let hem iwurðen. Ah ne
    bihoueð hit nawt þet tis hus beo irobbet, for þer is inne þe tresor þet Godd ȝef
    himseolf fore - þet is monnes sawle. Forte breoke þis hus efter þis tresor þet
    Godd bohte mid his deað and **lette lif** o rode is moni þeof abuten, ba bi dei
25 ant bi niht: vnselliche gasttes wið alle unwreaste þeawes; ant aȝein euch god
    þeaw þe biwiteð i þis hus Godes deore chatel vnder Wittes wissunge þet is
    huse-lauerd is eauer hire unþeaw **forte** sechen inȝong abute þe wahes, to
    amurðrin hire þrinne. Þet heaued þrof is þe feont, þe meistreð ham alle.
    Aȝeines him ant his keis þe husebonde, þet is Wit, warneð his hus þus: vre
30 Lauerd haue ileanett him fowre of his dehtren, þet beoð to vnderstonden þe
    fowr heaued-þeawes. Þe erste is Warschipe icleopet, ant te oðer is ihaten
    Gastelich Strengðe, ant te þridde is Meað; Rihtwisnesse þe feorðe.

Phrases

aþet < *OE oððæt* 'until'

forte = for to

lette lif 'to die'

nalde = ne walde

nis = ne is

Discussion topics

1. Prove that this is a Western text.

2. Examine all environments for the formation of new diphthongs. How far has the process advanced?

3. Trace the phonetic development of (4) *breoken* to ModE. Compare with (5) *spekeð*.

4. Examine the function of *þe, þaet, þis* and compare to the definite article in Modern English.

Ormulum

An early-13th-c. series of verse homilies from the North-east Midlands. They have no literary merit but stand out with their peculiar spelling.

      An Romanisshe kaserr-king   wass Augusstuss ȝehatenn,

      Annd he wass wurrðenn kaserr-king   off all mannkinn onn erðe,

      Annd he gann ðennkenn off himmsellf, annd off hiss miccle riche.

      Annd he bigann to ðennkenn ða,   swa summ ðe goddspell kiðeðð,

5   Off ðatt he wollde witenn wel   hu mikell fehh himm come,

      ȝiff himm off all hiss kinedom   illc mann an peninng ȝæfe.

      Annd he bad settenn upp o writt,   all mannkinn forr to lokenn,

      Hu mikell fehh he mihhte swa   off all ðe werelld sammnenn,

      Đurrh ðatt himm shollde off illc an mann an pening wurrðenn reccnedd.

10   Annd ta wass sett tatt iwhillc mann, whær summ he wære o lande,

      Ham shollde wendenn to ðatt tun   ðatt he wass borenn inne,

      Annd tatt he shollde ðær forr himm hiss hæfedd peninng reccnenn,

      Swa ðatt he ȝæn ðe kaserr-king   ne felle nohht i wite.

      Annd i ðatt illke time wass   Iosæp wiðð Sannte Marȝe

15   I Galilew, annd i ðatt tun   ðatt Nazaræð wass nemmnedd.

      Annd ta ðeȝȝ baðe forenn ham   till ðeȝȝre baðre kinde;

      Inntill ðe land off ȝerrsalæm   ðeȝȝ forenn samenn baðe,

      Annd comenn inn till Beððleæm,   till ðeȝȝre baðre birde -

      Đær wass hemm baðe birde to,   forr ðatt teȝȝ baðe wæren

20   Off Dauiðð kingess kinnesmenn,   swa summ ðe goddspell kiðeðð.

      Annd Dauiðð kingess birde wass   i Beððleæmess chesstre;

      Annd hemm wass baðe birde ðær ðurrh Dauiðð kingess birde;

Forr ðatt teȝȝ baðe wærenn off   Dauiðess kinn annd sibbe.

Annd Sannte Marȝess time wass   ðatt ȝho ða shollde childenn,

25   Annd tær ȝho barr Allmahhtiȝ Godd ðat all ðiss werelld wrohhte,

Annd wand himm sone i winnde-clut annd leȝȝde himm inn a cribbe,

Forr ði ðat ȝho ne wiste whær   ȝho mihhte himm don i bure.

Annd tohh ðatt Godd wass borenn ðær   swa dærnelike onn erðe,

Annd wundenn ðær swa wreccheliȝ   wiðð clutess inn an cribbe,

30   Ne wollde he nohht forrholenn ben   ðohhweððre i ðeȝȝre clutess,

Acc wollde shæwenn whatt he wass   ðurhh hefennlike takenn.

Forr sone anan affterr ðatt he   wass borenn ðær to manne,

Ðær-onnfasst i ðat illke land   wass seȝhenn mikell takenn.

An ennel comm off heffness ærd,   inn aness weress hewe,

35   Till hirdess ðær ðær ðeȝȝ ðatt nihht   biwokenn ðeȝȝre faldess.

Ðatt eegel comm annd stod hemm bi   wiðð heffness lihht annd leme.

Annd forrðrihht summ ðeȝȝ sæȝhenn himm,   ðeȝȝ wurrdenn swiðe offdredde;

Annd Goddess enngel hemm bigann   to frofrenn annd to beldenn,

Annd seȝȝde hemm ðuss o Goddess hallf   wiðð swiðe milde spæche:

40   'Ne be ȝe nohht forrdredde off me,   acc be ȝe swiðe bliðe,

Forr Icc amm sennd off heffness ærd   to kiðenn Godess wille,

To kiðenn ȝuw ðatt all follc iss   nu cumenn mikell blisse.

Forr ȝuw iss borenn nu todaȝȝ   hælennde off ȝure sinness,

An wennchell ðatt iss Iesu Crist,   ðatt wite ȝe to soðe.

45   Annd her-onnfasst he borenn iss   I Dauiðð kingess chesstre,

Ðatt iss ȝehatenn Beððleæm   I ðiss Iudisskenn birde.

Annd her Icc wile shæwenn ȝuw   summ ðing to witerr takennn:

ȝe shulenn findenn ænne child   i winnde clutess wundenn,

Annd itt iss inn a cribbe leȝȝd,   annd tær ȝet muȝhenn findenn.'

50   Annd sone anan se ðiss wass seȝȝd   ðurrh an off Godess enngless,

A mikell here off enngle ðed   wass cumenn ut off heffne,

Annd all ðatt hirde-flocc hemm sahh   annd herrde whatt teȝȝ sungenn.

Ðeȝȝ alle sungenn ænne sang   Drihhtin to lofe annd wurrðe,

Annd tuss ðeȝȝ sungenn alle imæn   swa summ ðe goddspell kiðeðð:

55   'Si Drihhtin upp inn heffness ærd   wurrðminnt annd loff annd wullderr,

Annd upponn erðe griðð annd friðð ðurrh Godess mildherrtnesse,

Till iwhillc mann ðatt habebenn shall   God herrte annd aȝȝ god wille.'

Annd sone anan se ðiss wass ðær   ðurrh Godess enngles awwnedd,

Ðeȝȝ wenndenn fra ða wake-menn   all ut off ðeȝȝre sihhðe.

Phrases

ham shollde 'it was necessary for them'

Discussion topics

1. Illustrate Lengthening before Homorganic Clusters and Open Syllable Lengthening.

2. Give examples of words with long vowels which appear with short vowels in ModE.

3. Describe the distribution of the Scandinavian and the native forms of the 3rd person plural personal pronoun.

4. Give examples of analytical verb forms (passive, perfect).

5. Make a list of remnants of patterns of OE strong verbs.

De Propheta

A Homily in the Southern dialect written before 1200.

Bi ieremie þe prophete we aȝen to understonden ulcne mon sunfulle. Þ lið in heuie sunne 7 þurh soðe scrift his sunbendes nule slakien. *funiculi amaritudines penitencie significant.* Þe rapes þe weren icast to him bitacneð þe herdnesse of scrifte for nis nan of us se strong þe hefde idon þre hefed sunnen

5   Þ his licome nere swiðe feble er he hefde idreȝen þet scrift þe þer to bilimpeð. *panni circumposti funibus. ecclesie sacramenta significant. quibus penitencie duricia mitigatur.* Þas kinges hus bitacneð hali chirche. Þa claðes Þ weren isende ut of þes kings huse for to binden þe rapes mid bitacnet þe halie ureisuns þe **me** singeð in halie chirche. 7 þe halie sacramens þe me sacreð in alesnesse of alla

10   sunfulle. Leofemen, nu ȝe habbeð iherð of þis putte þe bitacninge þe ic habbe embe ispeken. 7 þe bitacninge of þe prophete 7 Þ þe rapes bitacneð. 7 hwat þa

claðes bitacneð þe þe rapes weren mide biwunden. Ihereð nuðe whulche
þinges wunieð I þisse putte. Þer wunieð fower cunnes wurmes inne Þ fordoð
nuðe al þeos midelerd. Þer wunieð inne faȝe neddren 7 beoreð atter under

15   heore tunge. Blake tadden 7 habbeð atter uppon heore heorte. Ȝeluwe froggen
and crabben. Crabbe is an manere of fissce in þere sea. Þ is fis is of swulc cunde
Þ euer se he mare strengðdeð him to swimminde mid þe watere se he mare
swimmeð abac. 7 þe alde crabbe seide to þe ȝunge: "Hwi ne swimmest þu forð
warð in þere sea alse oðer fisses doð?" and heo seide: "Leofe moder, swim þu

20   foren me 7 tech me hu ic scal swimmen forðward mid þe streme." 7 swam hire
þeraȝen. Þas faȝe neddre bitacneð þis faȝe folc þe wuneð in þisse weorlde, þe
speket alse feire biforen heore euencristene alse heo heom walde in to heore
bosme puten. 7 swa sone se hi beoð iturnd awey from heom heom totwiccheð 7
todraȝeð mid ufele weordes. *Hii eciam sunt doctores 7 falsi xpistiani.* Þos men þe

25   þus todraȝeð heore euencristene bihinden heo habbeð þe nome of cristene ah
þah heo beoð cristes unwines 7 beoð monslaȝen for heo slaȝeð heore aȝene
saule 7 bringeð heon in to þare eche pine of helle.

    Þos blaca tadden Þ habbeð Þ atter uppon heore heorte bitacneð þes riche
men þe habbeð þes mucheles weorldes ehte 7 na maȝen noht itimien þar of to

30   ten ne to drinken ne na god don þer of for þe luue of godalmihtin þe haueð hit
heom al geuen, ah liggeð þer uppon alse þe tadde deð in þere eorðe Þ neure ne
mei itimien to eten hire fulle, swa heo is afered lestem þeo eorðe hire trukie.
Þeos ilke ehte þe þeos þus ouerliggeð heom turneð to swart atter for heo falleð
þer þurh in to þer stronge pine þet na mon ne mei tellen.

35   Þeos ȝeolewe froggen bitacneð þeos wimmen þe claþeð heom mid ȝeoluwe
claþe. For þe ȝeolewe clað is þes deofles helfter. Þeos wimmen þe þus lumeð
beoð þes deofles musestoch iclepede. For þenne þe mon wule tilden his
musestoch he bindeð uppon þa swike chese 7 bret hine for þon Þ he scolde
swote smelle. And þurh þe sweote smell of þe chese he bicherreð monie mus to

40   þe stoke. Alswa doð monie of þas wimmen heo smurieð heom mid blanchet Þ is
þes deofles sape 7 claþeð heom mid ȝeoluwe claþe Þ is deofles helfter. 7
seodðan heo lokieð in þe scawere Þ is þe deofles hindene. Þus heo doð for to
feiren heom seluen and to draȝen lechurs to ham. Ah heo fuleð heom seluen
þer mide. Nu, leofemen, for godes lufe witeð how wið þes deofles musestoch 7

45 witeð eow þet ȝe ne beo noht þe foaȝe neddre, ne þe blake tadde, ne þe ȝolewe frogge.

Phrases

me = man, *an indefinite subject*

Discussion topics

1. What is the reflex of OE /ɑː/?
2. Prove that (12) *whulche*, (13) *wurme*, (13) *cunne*, (29) *muchel* are dialectal. Give more examples.
3. Trace the phonetic changes to ModE in (16) *swulc(h),* (19) *alse,* (38) *scolde,* (33) *ilke.*
4. Point out traces of case inflections in **a)** the substantival system; **b)** the pronominal system; **c)** the adjectival system.

The Bestiary

A poem from the early 13th c. presenting allegorical and descriptive pieces about real and mythical animals. East-Midland dialect.

Natura Formice
Þa mire is maȝti; mikel ge swinkeð
In sumer and in softe weder, so we ofte sen hauen.
In ðe heruest hardilike gangeð,
And renneð rapelike, and **resteð hire** seldum,
5 And fecheð hire fode ðer ge it mai finden.
Gaddreð ilkines sed,
Boðen of wude and of wed,
Of corn and of gres,
Þat hire to hauen es.
10 Haleð to hire hole ðat siðen hire helpeð,
Þar ge wile ben
Winter agen:
Caue ge haueð to crepen in, ðat winter hire ne derie;

Mete in hire hule ðat ge muge bi liuen.

15 Þus ge tileð ðar wiles ge time haueð – So it her telleð.

Oc finde ge ðe wete, corn ðat hire qwemeð

Al ge forleteð ðis oðer sed ðat Ic er seide,

Ne bit ge nowt ðe barlic beren abuten,

Oc suneð it and sakeð forð so it same were.

20 Get is wunder of ðis wirm more ðanne man weneð:

Þe corn ðat ge to caue bereð al **get** bit **otwinne**,

Þat it ne forwurðe, ne waxe hire fro,

Er ge it eten wille.

Significacio

Þe mire muneð us mete to tilen –

25 Long liuenoðe ðis little wile

Þe we on ðis werld wunen.

For ðanne we of wenen, ðanne is ure winter.

We sulen hunger hauen, and harde sures,

Buten we ben war here.

30 Do we forði so doð ðis der – ðanne be we derue,

On ðat dai ðat dom sal ben, ðat it ne **us harde rewe.**

Seke we ure liues fod, ðat we ben siker ðere,

So ðis wirm in winter is, ðan ge ne tileð nummore.

Þe mire suneð ðe barlic ðanne ge fint te wete:

35 Þe olde lage we ogen to sunen, ðe newe we hauen moten.

Þe corn ðat ge to caue bereð, all ge it bit **otwinne**:

Þe lage us lereð to don god, and forbedeð us sinne.

It bet us erðliche bodes and bekneð euelike.

It fet ðe licham and te gost, oc nowt o geuelike.

Phrases

get = ge it

otwinne = a twinne 'in two'

resteð hire *reflexive*

it ne us harde rewe 'we would not sorely rue it'

Discussion topics

1. Comment on the value of the grapheme <g> in: (1) *magti*, (1) *ge*, (12) *agen*, (14) *muge*, (21) *get,* (35) *lage*.

2. Trace to Modern English (3) *heruest*, (5) *finden*, (7) *wude,* (35) *lage*.

3. Compare (20) *get is wunder* with its Modern English equivalent and comment on the effect of the introduction of a formal subject.

A Kentish Sermon

Translated from French before 1250.

We redeth i ðo holi godespelle of tedai ase ure Louerd God Almichti ibore was of ure Lauedi Seinte Marie i ðe cite of Bethleem, ðet si sterre was seauinge of his beringe swo apeirede te ðo ðrie kinges of heðenesse tojanes ðo sunne risinde. And alswo he biknewe his beringe bi ðo sterre, swo hi nomen conseil
5　betuene hem ðet hi wolden gon forto hyne anuri, and ðet hi wolden offri him gold, and stor, and mirre...

Lordinges and leuedis, ðis is si glorius miracle and si glorius seywinge of ure Lordes beringe ðet us telð ðet holi godespel of teday. And ye muee wel understonde be ðo speche of the godspelle ðet me sal todai mor makie offrinke
10　ðan anoðren dai; and ðerof us yeft ensample ðo ðrie kinges of heðenesse, ðet comen fram verrene londes ure Louerd to seche and him makie offrinke. And be ðet hi offrede gold, ðet is cuuenable yefte to kinge, seawede ðet he was sothfast king; and be ðet hi offrede stor, ðet me offrede wylem be ðo ialde laghe to here godes sacrefise, seawede ðet he was verray prest; and be ðet hi
15　offrede mirre, ðet is biter ðing, signifieth ðet hi hedde biliaue ðet he was diadlich ðet diath solde suffri for manken.

Nu ihiereth wet signefieth ðet gold, ðet stor, ðet mirre; and offre we gostliche to ure Lorde ðet hi offrede fleesliche. Ðet gold, ðet is bricht and glareth ine ðo brichtnisse of ðo sunne, signifieth ðe gode beleaue ðet is bricht
20　ine ðe gode Cristenemannes herte: si gode beleaue licht and is bricht ine ðo

herte of ðo gode manne ase gold. Offre we ðanne God Almichti god gold: beleue we stedefastliche ðet Fader and Sune and Holy Gost is onlepi God. Woso hath beleaue ine Gode swo offreth him god gold. Ðet stor signified gode werkes; for ase se smech of ðe store wanne hit is ido into ðe ueree and goth upward to ðo

25 heuene and to Gode ward, swo amuntet si gode biddinge to Gode of ðo herte of ðo gode Cristenmanne. Swo we mowe sigge ðet stor signifieth ðe herte, and se smech luue of Gode. Bi ðet mirre ðat is biter, and be ðo biternesse defendet ðet corse ðet is mide ismered, ðet no werm **nel** come **ihende**, signifiet ðo gode werkes ðet is biter to ðo yemernesse of ure flesce. Si mirre signifiet uastinge,

30 for ðo luue of Gode wakie, go ine pelrimage, uisiti ðe poure and to sike, and to do alle ðe gode ðet me may do for Godes luue; ðo ilke ðinges so bieth bitere to ðo wrichede flessce. Ac also si mirre loket ðet bodi ðet no werm ne may ðet-ihende come, so us defendet ðo ileke ðinges fram senne, and fram ðe amonestement of ðo dieule, ðet ha ne may us undo.

Phrases

ihende 'at hand'
nel = ne will

Discussion topics

1. Make a list of Kenticisms.
2. Trace to Modern English (16) *diadlich,* (16) *diath*, (22) *stede.*
   Determine the phonetic environment in which they develop the same Modern English sound.
3. Discuss the treatment of noun gender as expressed by modifiers.
4. Find words of French origin. To what extent and in what way are French borrowings adapted?

Floris and Blauncheflour

One of the earliest verse romances, dated 1250, based on a lost French version.

'Nou beþ þer inne þat riche toure

Four and twenty maidenes boure.

So wel were þat ilke man

þat miȝte wonen in þat an -

5 Now **þourt him** neuere, ful iwis,

Willen after more blisse!

Nou beþ þer seriaunts in þe stage

To seruen þe maidens of parage;

Ne mai no seriaunt be þerinne

10 þat in his brech bereþ þe ginne,

Neiþer bi dai ne bi niȝt,

But he be ase capoun diȝt,

And at þe gate is a gateward -

He **nis** no fol ne no coward!

15 Ȝif þer comeð ani man

Wiðinne þat ilche barbican,

But hit be bi his leue,

He wille him boþe bete and reue.

Þe porter is proud wiðalle -

20 Euerich dai he goþ in palle.

And þe amerail is so wonder a gome

Þat euerich ȝer hit is his wone

To chesen him a newe wif

(Þei he loueþ his queene as his lyf!)

25 And whan he a newe wif vnderfo

Yknaweð hou hit schal be do:

Þanne scholle men fechche doun of þe stage

Alle þe maidenes of parage

An brenge hem into an orchard

30 (Þe fairest of al middelhard).

Þer is mirie foulen song -

Men miȝte libben þeramong.

Aboute þe orchard goþ a wal:

Þe werste ston is cristal.

35   Þer man mai sen on þe ston

Mochel of þis werldes wisdom.

And a welle is of mochel pris:

Þe strem com fram Paradis,

Þe grauel in þe grounde of preciouse stone

40   (And of vertu, iwis, echone) -

Of saphires and of sardoines,

Of onecles and of calsidoines.

Nou is þe walle of so mochel eye,

Ȝif þer comeð ani maiden þat is forleie,

45   And hi bowe to þe grounde

Forto waschen here honde,

Þe water wille ȝelle als hit ware wod

And bicome on hire so red so blod.

Wich maiden þe water fareð on so,

50   Hi schal sone be fordo.

And **þilke** þat beþ maidenes clene

Þai mai hem wassche of þe rene:

Þe water wille erne stille and cler -

Nelle hit hem make no daunger.

55   At þe welle-heued þer stant a tre -

Þe fairest þat mai in erthe be.

Hit is icleped "þe Tre of Loue";

For floures and blosmes beþ euer aboue,

And **þilke** þat clene maidenes be,

60   Men schal hem bringe vnder þat tre,

And wich so falleð on þat flour,

He schal ben chosen quen wið honur.

And ȝif þer ani maiden is

Þat **þamerail** halt of mest pris,

65   Þe flour schal on here be went

Þourh art and þourgh enchantement.

Þous he cheseþ þourȝ þe flour,

And euere we herkneð when hit be Blauncheflour.'

Phrases

nelle = ne wille   **þamerail** = þe amerail
nis = ne is   **þourt him** = þorfte him 'he needed'
þilke = þe ilke

Discussion topics

1. Explain the unetymological *u* in: (title) *Blauncheflour;* (7) *seriaunt;* (54) *daunger.* Did it have any effect on the subsequent development of the neighbouring vowel (compare to the ModE spelling of words of French origin with a similar sound structure)?

2. Comment on the frequency of verbal prefixation.

3. Trace the phonetic and spelling changes in (4) *miȝt*, (11) *niȝt* to Modern English.

4. How many semantic and syntactic functions of the preposition *of* can you detect?

5. Mark long vowels judging by their subsequent development.

The Fox and the Wolf

Based on the popular at the time *Roman de Renart*. Combines features of beast-epic and fable. Dated 1250-75 from the South.

A vox gon out of þe wode go,

Afingret so þat **him wes wo** -

He **nes** neuere in none wise

Afingret erour half so swiðe.

5   He ne hoeld nouðer wey ne strete,

For **him wes loð** men to mete;

Him were leuere meten one hen

Þen half an oundred wimmen!

He strok swiðe oueral

10 So þat he ofsei ane wal.

Wiðinne þe walle wes an hous:

The wox wes þider swiðe wous,

For he þohute his hounger aquenche,

Oðer mid mete oȝðer mit drunche.

15 Abouten he biheld wel ȝerne.

Þo eroust bigon þe vox to erne

Al fort he come to one walle;

And some þerof wes afalle,

And wes þe wall oueral tobroke,

20 And on ȝat þer wes iloke.

At þe furmeste bruche þat he fond

He lep in, and ouer he wond.

Þo he wes inne, smere he lou

And þerof he hadde gome inou

25 (For he com in wiðouten leue

Boþen of haiward and of reue!)

On hous þer wes: þe dor wes ope.

Hennen weren þerinne icrope

Fiue (þat makeð ane flok),

30 And miþ hem sat an kok.

Þe kok him wes flowen on hey,

And two hennen him seten ney.

'Wox!' quad he, 'wat dest þou þare?

Go hom! Crist þe ȝeue kare:

35 **Houre** hennen þou dest ofte shome.'

'Be stille, Ich hote, a Godes nome!'

Quað þe wox, 'Sire Chauntecler,

Þou fle adoun and com me ner.

I **nabbe** don her nout bote goed -

40 I have leten þine hennen blod.

Hy weren seke ounder þe ribe,

Þat hy ne miȝtte non lengour libe

Bote here heddre were itake.

Þat I do for almes sake -

45   Ich haue hem leten eddre-blod.

And þe, Chauntecler, hit wolde don goed

(Þou hauest þat ilke ounder þe splen -

Þou **nestes** neuere daies ten);

For þine lif-dayes beþ al ago

50   Bote þou bi mine rede do.

I do þe lete blod ounder þe brest,

Oðer sone axe after þe prest.'

'Go wei!' quod þe kok, 'wo þe bigo!

Þou hauest don oure kunne wo -

55   Go mid þan þat þou hauest nouðe.

Acoursed be þou of Godes mouðe!

For were I adoun, bi Godes nome

Ich miȝte ben siker of oþre shome.

Ac weste hit **houre** cellerer

60   Þat þou were icomen her,

He wolde sone after þe ȝonge

Mid pikes and stones and staues stronge.

Alle þine bones he wolde tobreke -

Þene we weren wel awreke!'

65   He wes stille ne spak namore,

Ac he werþ aþurst wel sore:

Þe þurst him dede more wo

Þen heuede raþer his hounger do.

Oueral he ede and sohvte:

70   On auenture, his wiit him brohute

To one putte wes water inne,

Þat wes imaked mid grete ginne.

Tuo boketes þer he founde:

Þat oðer wende to þe grounde,

75 Þat wen **me** shulde þat on opwinde

  Þat oðer wolde adoun winde.

  He ne **hounderstod** nout of þe ginne:

  He nom þat boket and lop þerinne,

  For he hopede inou to drinke.

80 Þis boket biginneð to sinke:

  To late þe vox wes biþout

  Þo he wes in þe ginne ibrout.

  Inou he gon him biþenche,

  Ac hit ne halp mid none wrenche:

85 Adoun he moste, he wes þerinne -

  Ikaut he wes mid swikele ginne.

  Hit miȝte han iben wel his wille

  To lete þat boket hongi stille.

  Wat mið serewe and mid drede,

90 Al his þurst him ouer-hede.

  Al þus he com to þe grounde,

  And water inou þer he founde.

  Þo he fond water, ȝerne he dronk

  (**Him þoute** þat water þere stonk,

95 For hit wes toȝeines his wille!)

Phrases

him wes wo 'he was sorry'	**houre** = our
him wes loð 'he was loath'	**me** = man, *an indefinite subject*
him were leuere 'he would rather'	**nabbe** = ne habbe
him þoute 'it seemed to him'	**nes** = ne wes
hounderstod = understod	**nestes** = ne wistest 'you wouldn't know'

Discussion topics

1. In the following words, state the values to the digraph <ou>, and trace their

 reflexes in Modern English:

(1) out	(56) acoursed
(8) oundred	(56) mouðe
(11) hous	(59) houre
(13) hounger	(81) biþout
(33) þou	(82) ibrout (cf. the spelling of (70) *brohute*)
(38) adoun	(91) grounde
(39) nout	(92) founde
(41) ounder	(94) þoute
(54) oure	

2. Give examples of impersonal constructions and comment on their Modern English equivalents.

3. Give examples of analytical constructions of *be + past participle* of intransitive verbs and comment on their function.

4. Examine the different functions of *do* in the text.

Havelok the Dane

A verse romance composed c 1280-1300 in North-East Midlands. Havelok, the sonof the Danish king, is handed over by his guardian to the fisherman Grim to be killed. Magic tokens reveal his identity and lead Grim to flee with him to England.

<div style="margin-left:2em">

In Humber Grim bigan to lende,

In Lindeseye, rith at þe north ende.

Þer sat is ship upon þe sond;

But Grim it drou up to þe lond,

5   And þere he made a litel cote

To him and to hise flote.

Bigan he, þere forto erðe,

A litel hus to maken of erðe,

So þat he wel þore were

10   Of here herboru herborwed þere;

And for þat Grim þat place aucte

Þe stede of Grim þe name laucte,

So þat Grimesbi caleth alle

</div>

Þat þeroffe speken alle.

15 And so shullen men callen it ay

Bituene þis and Domesday.

Grim was fishere swiðe god

And mikel couðe on þe flod.

Mani god fish þerinne he tok,

20 Boðe with neth and with hok.

Gode paniers dede he make –

On til him, and oðer þrinne

Til hise sones, to beren fish inne

Vp o londe to selle and fonge.

25 Forbar he neyþer tun ne gronge,

Þat he ne to yede with his ware.

Kam he neuere hom handbare,

Þat he ne broucte bred and sowel

In his shirte or in his couel,

30 In his poke benes and korn –

Hise swink ne hauede he nowt forlorn.

And hwan he tok þe grete laumprei,

Ful wel he couðe þe rithe wei

To Lincolne, þe gode boru:

35 Ofte he yede it þoru and þoru,

Til he hauede wol wel sold

And þerfore þe penies told.

Þanne he com þenne he were bliþe,

For hom he brouthe fele siðe

40 Wastels, simenels with þe horn,

Netes flesh, shepes, and swines,

And hemp to maken of gode lines,

And stronge ropes to hise netes

(In þe se-weres he ofte setes).

45 Þusgate Grim him fayre ledde –

Him and his genge wel he fedde

Wel twelf winter oðer more.

Hauelok was war þat Grim swank sore

For his mete, and he lay at hom –

50   Þouthe, 'Ich am nou no grom:

Ich am wel waxen, and wel may eten

More þan euere Grim may geten.

Ich ete more, bi God on liue,

Þan Grim an hise children fiue!

55   It ne may nouth ben þus longe –

Goddot, Y wile with þe gange

Forto leren sum god to gete.

Swinken Ich wolde for mi mete –

It is no shame forto swinken!

60   Þe man þat may wel eten and drinken

Þat nouth ne ahue but on swink long.

To liggen at hom it is ful strong.

God yelde him, þer I ne may,

Þat haueth me fed to þis day!

65   Gladlike I wile þe paniers bere;

Ich woth ne shal it me nouth dere

Þey þer be inne a birðene gret

Also heui als a neth.

Shal Ich neuere lengere dwelle –

70   Tomorwen shal Ich forth pelle!'

Phrases

Goddot = God wot 'God knows'

Discussion topics

1. Did shortening take place before or after the Great Vowel Shift in the ModE versions of (19) *tok*, (20) *hok*, and (45) *ledde*, (46) *fedde*?

2. Examine and classify the Modern English pronunciations of all words with *r.*

3. Make a list of infinitives and comment on the markers.

The Voiage and Travaile of Sir Iohn Maundevile, Kt

Traveller's notes attributed to a fictitious narrator born in 1322, a translation of French texts from the middle of the 14th c. Describes interesting features of the terrain, fauna and flora of countries in Europe, together with some traditional stories and legends. Midland dialect.

And ʒif ʒou lyke to knowe the vertues of þe dyamand, as men may fynden in þe Lapidarye, þat many men knowen noght, I schall telle ʒou, as þei beʒonde the see seyn and affermen, of whom all science and all philosophie cometh from.

5   He þat bereth the dyamand vpon him, it ʒeueth him hardynese and manhode, and it kepeth the lemes of his body hole. It ʒeueth him victorye of his enemyes, in plee and in werre, ʒif his cause be rightfull; and it kepeth him þat bereth it in gode wytt; and it kepeth him fro strif and ryot, fro euyll sweuenes, from sorwes, and from enchauntementes, and from fantasyes and

10   illusiouns of wykked spirites. And ʒif ony cursed wycche or enchauntour wolde bewycche him þat bereth the dyamand, all þat sorwe and myschance schall turne to himself, þorgh vertue of þat ston. And also no wylde best dar assaylle the man þat bereth it on him. Also the dyamand scholde ben ʒouen frely, withouten coueytynge, and withouten byggynge; and þan it is of grettere

15   vertue. And it maketh a man more strong and more sad aʒenst his enemyes. And it heleth him þat is lunatyk, and hem þat the fend pursueth or trauayleth. And ʒif venym or poysoun be brought in presence of the dyamand, anon it begynneth to wexe moyst, and for to swete.

Đere ben also dyamandes in Ynde þat ben clept 'violastres', - for here

20   colour is liche vyolet, or more browne þan the violettes, - þat ben full harde and full precyous. But ʒit sum men loue not hem so wel as the oþere. But in soth to me, I wolde louen hem als moche as þe oþere; for I haue seen hem assayed. Also þere is anoþer maner of dyamandes þat ben als white as cristall, but þei ben a lityll more trouble; and þei ben gode and of gret vertue, and all

25   þei ben square and poynted of here owne kynde. And summme ben six squared, summe four squared, and summe þre, as nature schapeth hem.

And þerfore whan grete lordes and knyghtes gon to seche worschipe in armes, þei beren gladly the dyamaund vpon hem. I schal speke a litill more of

the dyamandes, allþough I tarye my matere for a tyme, to þat ende þat þei þat
30 knowen hem not be not disceyued be gabberes þat gon be the contree, þat
sellen hem. For whoso wil bye the dyamand, it is nedefull to him þat he knowe
hem, because þat men counterfeten hem often of cristall þat is ȝallow; and of
saphires of cytryne colour, þat is ȝalow also; and of the saphire loupe; and of
many oþer stones. But, I telle ȝou, theise contrefetes ben not so harde; and also
35 the poyntes wil breken lightly; and men may esily pollische hem. But summe
werkmen, for malice, wil not pollische hem, to þat entent to maken men
beleue þat þei may not be pollischt. But men may assaye hem in this manere:
First schere with hem, or write with hem, in saphires, in crystall, or in oþer
precious stones. After þat men taken the ademand, þat is the schipmannes
40 ston, þat draweth the nedle to him, and men leyn the dyamand vpon the
ademand, and leyn the nedle before the ademand; and ȝif the dyamand be
gode and vertuous, the ademand draweth not the nedle to him, whils the
dyamand is þere present. And this is the preef þat þei beȝonde the see maken.
Natheles it befalleth often tyme þat gode dyamand leseth his vertue, be synne
45 and for incontynence of him þat bereth it. And þanne is it nedfull to make it to
recoueren his vertue aȝen, or ell it is of litill value.

Discussion topics

1. Explain the Modern English spelling of (1) *vertue,* (2) *þei,* (6) *lemes,* (6) *werre,* (16)
    fend, (21) *loue,* (30) *contree.*
2. Trace to Modern English (24) *gret,* (28) *beren,* (35) *breken.*
3. Which morphological feature is a proof of the Midland origin of the text?
4. Make a list of words of French origin and classify them according to **a)** part of
    speech, **b)** semantic field and **c)** frequency in ModE.

Wycliff's Version of St Matthew's Gospel (with the OE version)

Wycliff (1320-84) was a theologian and a translator of the Bible.

XXV. 14. Sothely as a man goynge fer in   14. Sum man ferde on elðeodnysse,
pilgrimage, clepide his seruauntis, and   and clypode hys þeowas, and betæhte

bitoke to hem his goodis;

15. And to oon he ȝaue fyue talentis, forsothe to an other two, but to an other oon, to eche after his owne vertu; and wente forth anon.

16. Forsothe and he that hadde take fyue talentis, wente forth, and wrouȝte in hem, and wan other fyue.

17. Also and he that hadde taken two, wan other two.

18. Sothely he that hadde taken oon, goynge forth, dalf in to the erthe, andhidde the mone of his lord.

19. Bot after muche tyme, the lord of tho seruauntis came, and puttide resoun with hem.

20. And he that hadde taken fyue talentis, cummynge to, offride other fyue, seyinge, Lord, thou betokist me fyue talentis, loo! I haue geten ouer other fyue.

21. His lord seith to hym, Wel be thou, good seruaunt and feithful; for vpon fewe thingis thou hast ben trewe, I shal ordeyne thee vpon many thingis; entre thou in to the ioye of thi lord.

22. Forsothe and he that hadde taken two talentis, came to, and seith, Lord, thou bitokist two talentis; loo! I haue geten other two.

23. His lord seith to him, Wel be thou,

hym hys æhta;

15. And ane he sealde fif pund, sumum twa, sumum an, æghwylc umbe hys agenum mægene; and ferde sona.

16. Ða ferde se þe þa fif pund underfeng, … and gestrynde oðere fife.

17. And ealswa se þe þa twa underfeng, gestrynde oðre twa.

18. Witodlice se þe þæt an underfeng, ferde, and bedealf hyt oneorðan, and behydde hys hlafordes feoh.

19. Witodlice æfter miclum fyrste, com þæra þeowa hlaford, and dyhte hym gerad.

20. Ða com se þe þa fif pund underfeng, and brohte oðre fife, andcwæð, Hlaford, fif pund þu sealdestme, nu! ic gestrynde oðre fife.

21. Ða cwæð hys hlaford to hym, Beo bliðe, þu goda þeow and getrywa; forðam þe þu wære getrywe ofer lytle þing, ic gesette þe ofer mycle; ga into þines hlafordes blisse.

22. Ða com se þe þa twa pund underfeng, and cwæð, Hlaford, twa pund þu me sealdest; nu! ic hæbbe gestryned oðre twa.

23. Ða cwæð hys hlaford to hym,

good seruaunt and trewe; for vpon fewe thingis thou hast ben trewe, I shal ordeyne thee vpon many thingis; entre thou in to the ioye of thi lord.

24. Forsothe and he that hadde taken oo talent, cummiynge to, seith, Lord, I wote that thou art an hard man; thou repist wher thou hast nat sewen, and thou gederist togidre wher thou hast nat spreedde abrood;

25. And I dredynge wente, and hidde thi talent in the erthe; loo! thou hast that that is thin.

26. Sothely his lord answerynge, seide to hym, Yuel seruaunt and slowe, wistist thou that I repe wher I sewe nat, and gedere to gidre wher I spradde nat abrood?

27. Therefore it behouyde thee to sende my monee to chaungers, that and I cummynge shulde haue resceyued forsothe that that is myn with vsuris.
28. And so take ȝe awey from hym the talent, and ȝeue ȝe it to hym that hath ten talentis.

29. For to euery man hauynge it shal be gouen, and he shal haue plente; and to hym that hath nat, and that that he semeth to haue, shal be takenfro hym.

30. And caste ȝee out the vnprofitable seruaunt, and send ȝee hym in to

Geblissa, þu goda þeowa and getrywa; forðam þe þu wære getrywe ofer feawa, ofer fela ic þe gesette; ga on þines hlafordes gefean.

24. Ða com se þe þæt an pund underfeng, and cweað, Hlaford, ic wat þæt þu eart heard man; þu ripst þær þu ne seowe, and gaderast þær þu ne sprengdest;

25. And ic ferde of-dræd, and behydde þin pund on eorðan; her þu hæfst þæt þin ys.

26. þa andswarode hys hlaford him, and cwæð, Ðu yfela þeow and slawa, þu wistest þæt ic rype þær ic ne sawe, and ic gaderige þær ic ne stredde;

27. Hyt gebyrede þæt þu befæstest min feoh myneterum, and ic name þonne ic come þæt min ys mid þam gafole.
28. Animað þæt pund æt hym, and syllað ðam þe me þa tyn pund brohte.

29. Witodlice ælcon þæra þe hæfð man sylð, and he hæfð genoh; þam þe næfð, þæt **hym þyncð** þæt he hæbbe, þæt **hym byð ætbroden.**

30. And wurpað þone unnyttan þeowan on þa uttran þystru; þær byð

vttermore derknessis; there shal be wop, and toða gristbitung.
weepynge, and betynge togidre of teeth.

Phrases

hym þyncð 'it seems to him'

hym byð ætbroden 'taken away from him'

Discussion topics

1. Are the spellings <ee> and <oo> in the Middle English text consistent?
2. Make a list of all ME prepositional phrases which have replaced Old English prepositionless ones.
3. Discuss the differences between Old and Middle English word order.
4. Examine the development of the relative clause.
5. Underline all words of French origin in the Middle English text and discuss the change in vocabulary since Old English.

The Wife of Bath's Prologue (Chaucer)

Chaucer (1343–1400) wrote in the London dialect but varied the speech of his characters according to the part of the country they came from. The story told in the Prologue, of the wife's eventful life with her five husbands, develops her character as a protofeminist who openly subverts the prevailing patriarchal views of life and marriage.

> But now to purpos, why I tolde thee
> That I was beten for a book, pardee!
> Upon a nyght Jankyn, that was oure sire,
> Redde on his book, as he sat by the fire,
> 5 Of Eva first, that for hir wikkednesse
> Was al mankynde broght to wrecchednesse,
> For which that Jhesu Crist hymself was slayn,
> That boghte us with his herte blood agayn.
> Lo, heere expres of womman may ye finde,
> 10 That womman was the los of al mankynde.

Tho redde he me how Sampson loste his heres:

Slepynge, his lemman kitte it with hir sheres;

Thurgh which treson loste he bothe his yen.

Tho redde he me, if that I shal nat lyen,

15   Of Hercules and of his Dianyre,

That caused hym to sette hymself afyre.

No thyng forgat he the care and the wo

That Socrates hadde with his wyves two;

How Xantippa caste pisse upon his heed.

20   This sely man sat stille as he were deed;

He wiped his heed, namoore dorste he seyn,

But 'Er that thonder stynte, comth a reyn!"

Of Phasipha, that was the queene of Crete,

For shrewednesse, **hym thoughte** the tale swete;

25   Fy! spek namoore - it is a grisly thyng -

Of hire horrible lust and hir likyng.

Of Clytermystra, for hyre lecherye,

That falsly made hire housbonde to dye,

He redde it with ful good devocioun.

30   He tolde me eek for what occasioun

Amphiorax at Thebes loste his lyf.

Myn housbonde hadde a legende of hys wyf,

Eriphilem, that for an ouche of gold

Hath prively unto the Grekes told

35   Wher that hir housbonde hidde hym in a place,

For which he hadde at Thebes sory grace.

Of Lyvia tolde he me, and of Lucye:

They bothe made hir housbondes for to dye;

That oon for love, that oother was for hate.

40   Lyvia hir housbonde, on an even late,

Empoysoned hath, for that she was his fo;

Lucia, likerous, loved hire housbonde so

That, for he sholde alwey upon hire thynke,

She yaf hym swich a manere love-drynke

45 That he was deed er it were by the morwe;

And thus algates housbondes han sorwe.

    Thanne tolde he me how oon Latumyus

Compleyned unto his felawe Arrius

That in his gardyn growed swich a tree

50 On which he seyde how that his wyves thre

Hanged hemself for herte **despitus.**

'O leve brother,' quod this Arrius,

'Yif me a plante of **thilke** blissed tree,

And in my gardyn planted shal it bee.'

. . .

55 He spak moore harm than herte may bithynke;

And therwithal he knew of mo proverbes

Than in this world ther growen gras or herbes.

'Bet is', quod he, 'thyn habitacioun

Be with a leon or a foul dragoun,

60 Than with a womman usynge for to chyde.'

'Bet is', quod he, 'hye in the roof abyde,

Than with an angry wyf doun in the hous;

They been so wikked and contrarious,

They haten that hir housbondes loven ay.'

65 He seyde, 'a woman cast hir shame away,

Whan she cast of hir smok;' and furthermo,

'A fair womman, but she be chaast also,

Is lyk a gold ryng in a sowes nose.'

Who wolde wenen, or who wolde suppose,

70 The wo that in myn herte was, and pyne?

    And whan I saugh he wolde never fyne

To reden on this cursed book al nyght,

Al sodeynly thre leves have I plyght

Out of his book, right as he radde, and eke

75 I with my fest so took hym on the cheke

That in oure fyr he fil bakward adoun.

And he up stirte as dooth a wood leoun,

And with his fest he smoot me on the heed,

That in the floor I lay as I were deed.

80   And whan he saugh how stille that I lay,

He was agast, and wolde han fled his way,

Til **atte laste** out of my swogh I breyde.

'O! **hastow** slayn me, false theef?' I seyde,

'And for my land thus hastow mordred me?

85   Er I be deed, yet wol I kisse thee.'

   And neer he cam, and kneled faire adoun,

And seyde, 'Deere suster Alisoun,

As help me God! I shal thee never smyte.

That have I doon, **it is thyself to wyte**.

90   Foryeve it me, and that I thee biseke!'

   And yet eftsones I hitte hym on the cheke,

And seyde, 'Theef, thus muchel am I wreke;

Now wol I dye, I may no lenger speke.'

But **atte laste**, with muchel care and wo,

95   We fille acorded by us selven two.

He yaf me al the bridel in myn hond,

To han the governance of hous and lond,

And of his tonge, and of his hond also;

And made hym brenne his book anon right tho.

100   And whan that I hadde geten unto me,

By maistrie, al the soveraynetee,

And that he seyde, 'Myn owene trewe wyf,

Do **as thee lust** the terme of al thy lyf;

Keep thyn honour, and keep eek myn estaat' -

105   After that day we hadden never debaat.

God helpe me so, I was to hym as kynde

As any wyf from Denmark unto Ynde,

And also trewe, and so was he to me.

Phrases

atte laste = *at the laste* 'at last'

despitus 'a contemptible person'

hastow = *hast thou* 'have you'

hym thoughte 'it seemed to him'

it is thyself to wyte 'it is you to blame'

as thee lust 'as you please'

thilke = *the ilke* 'the same'

Discussion topics

1. Make a list of all cases of ellision of final <e>.
2. Explain the forms (44) *yaf,* (53) *yif,* (90) *(for)yeve* as well as their Modern English equivalents.
3. Comment on the contractions (53) *thilke,* (83) *hastow, (94) atte laste.*
4. Point out different markers for the infinitive.
5. Trace to Modern English the pronunciation of (86) *kneled,* (98) *tonge,* (108) *trewe,* (30) *occasioun,* (96) *bridel,* (35) *place,* (78) *heed.*
6. Compare the reflexive constructions in the text with their Modern English equivalents.

William Caxton

1490, from the Preface to his translation (from the French) of Virgil's *Aeneid.*

… And when I had advysed me in this seyd boke, I delybered and concluded to translate it into englysshe, and forthwyth toke a penne and ynke, and wrote a leef or tweyne, whyche I oversawe agayn to corecte it. And when I sawe the fayr and straunge termes therin I doubted that it sholde not please some

5 gentylmen whiche late blamed me, sayeng that in my translacyons I had over curyous termes whiche coude not be understande of comyn peple, and desired me to use olde and homely termes in my translacyons. And **fayn** wolde I satysfye every man, and so to doo, toke an olde boke and redde therin; and certaynly the englisshe was so rude and brood that I coude not wele

10 understande it. And also my lorde abbot of westmynster ded do shew to me late, certayn evydences wryton in olde englisshe, for to reduce it in-to our englisshe now usid. And certaynly it was wreton in suche wyse that it was

more lyke dutche than englisshe; I coude not reduce ne brynge it to be
understonden. And certaynly our langage now used varyeth ferre from that
15   whiche was used and spoken whan I was borne. For we englisshe men ben
borne under the domynacyon of the mone, whiche is never stedfaste, but ever
waverynge, wexynge one season, and waneth and dyscreaseth another season.
And that comyn englisshe that is spoken in one shyre varyeth from a nother.
In so moche that in my dayes happened that certayn marchauntes were in a
20   shippe in tamyse, for to have sayled over the see to zelande, and for to lacke of
wynde, thei taryed **atte** forlond, and wente to lande for to refreshe them. And
one of theym named Sheffelde, a mercer, cam in-to an hows and axed for
mete; and specyally he axyd after eggys. And the goode wyf andswerede, that
she coude speke no frenshe. And the marchaunt was angry, for he also coude
25   speke no frenshe, but wolde have hadde egges, and she understode hym not.
And thenne at laste a nother sayd that he wolde have eyren. Then the good
wyf sayd that she understod hym wel. Loo, what sholde a man in thyse dayes
now wryte, egges or eyren? Certaynly it is harde to playse every man by cause
of dyversite and chaunge of langage. For in these dayes every man that is in
30   ony reputacyon in his countre, wyll utter his commynycacyon and maters in
suche maners and termes that fewe men shall understonde theym. And som
honest and grete clerkes have ben wyth me, and desired me to wryte the
moste curyous termes that I coude fynde. And thus bytwene playn, rude and
curyous, I stande abasshed.

Phrases

atte = *at the*
fayn '*with pleasure*' *cf* OE *fægnian* '*to rejoice*'

Discussion topics

1. Give proof of the lack of syncope in the endings for the past tense and the plural
    of nouns.
2. Make a list of verbs used differently from Modern English.
3. Explain the form of the past participle (6) *understande*.
4. Comment on the usage of the verb *to do* in (10) *ded do shew to me.*

MIDDLE ENGLISH GLOSSARY

Due to the enormous diversity of ME spelling and morphology, forms are often entered as they appear in the texts. In such cases the forms are grammatically described.

A reference is made to the OE, OFr, ON or other sources of loan words to help students in their study of English vocabulary in particular and language change in general. For the same purpose the reader is referred to the Old Engish Glossary when possible.

All words are in alphabetical order but **variants** are often listed together:

a/o	g/h/ʒ/gh/ʒh
a/e/æ	ouh/oh/uh/
ah/auh	o/u
ch/k	sc/sh
e/eo	þ/ð/th/t
e/i	u/v
i/y	u/ou
i/u (W)	w/wh

Note that in Western words (marked W) <u> had the value [y], from OE <y> [y].

Predictable words are not included in the Glossary, e.g. ME *bicome*, except if they illustrate a change.

For early inflected forms of the personal and demonstrative pronouns, see the OE Tables.

Abbreviations: see p. 4

A

abruden *pp*	thrust out *OE* abregdan
abyden	to abide *OE* abīdan
ac ah *conj*	but
acorden	to agree, to reconcile *OFr* accorder
ademand	a gem
afalle *pp*	fallen down
affermen	to affirm *OFr* afermer
afingret *pp*	starved *OE* ofhyngrian

afric *pron*   every *OE* æfric

afyre   afire < on fire

agen aȝen ahen   ought to *OE* āgan

agen aȝen *adv*   again

aȝȝ *adv*   also *OE* ēac

ago *pp*   gone *OE* āgān

aihte   property *s OE* ǣht

al *adv*   always

alde ialde *adj*   old *s OE* eald

aldren *pl*   princes

alesnesse   release, deliverance < *OE* alēosan 'to release'

algates *adv*   always

almes   alms *OE* ælmesse

als(e) *adv*   as

alswa *adv*   also *OE* eal swā

amerail   admiral *OFr* amiral *Arab* amīr a'lā 'high ruler'

amonestement   admonition *OFr* amonester

amunten   to mount *OFr* amonter

amurðrin   to murder *OE* amyrðrian

anan anon *adv*   soon, straight away

anuri   to honour *OFr* (h)onur

aquenchen   to quench *OE* acwencan

ar ær *adv*   before

ærd   dwelling *s OE* eard

ærfeðtelle *adj*   innumerable, 'difficult to tell' *s OE* earfeð

ærl   earl *OE* eorl

armes   arms *OFr* armes

ærndrache   messanger *s OE* ærendraca

art   cunning *OFr* art

arȝe   bad, cowardly *OE* earg

assayen   to test, to polish *OFr* essaier

assayllen   to attack, to assail *OFr* assaillir

atter   poison *OE* āttor

aute *pt*   owned *OE* āhte

awreke *pp*	avenged *OE* wrecan
awwn	to own (up) *OE* āgan
axen	to ask *OE* axian
ay *adv*	always

B

ba baðe boðe *pron*	both *s* OE Tables
bad *pt*	to offer *OE* bēodan 2 - bēad
barbican	outwork to a fortress *OFr* barbicane
barlic	barley
barr *pt*	to bear *OE* beran 4
befallen	to happen
beknen	to beckon *OE* bēacnian
beldenn	to comfort
belocen *pp*	imprisoned *OE* belūcan 'to lock in'
ben *inf/pres pl Midl*	to be/are
beneomen	to take away *OE* beniman
be(o) *inf*	to be
bere	noise
be(o)ren	to carry, to bear *OE* beran
berie *K Dat*	town, borough *s* boru
beringe	birth *s OE* beran 4
besemen	to beseem *ON* soemr 'fitting'
besien	to see to, to treat *OE* besēon
bet *3rd sg pres*	to bid, to ask *OE* biddan 5
bet *3rd sg pres*	to offer *OE* bēodan 2
bet *comp*	better
beten	to beat *OE* bēatan 7
betoken	to commit, to deliver *OE betæcen + taken*
betynge	beating *s* beten
bewycchen	to bewitch *OE* bewiccian
bicherren	to turn *OE* cierran
bidden	to ask *s OE* biddan 5

biddinge	prayer *s OE* biddan 5
bieth *pres pl*	are *OE* bēoð
bigon *pp*	over-run *s OE* bīgān
biholden	to see *OE* behealdan 7
bihoten	to promise *OE* behātan 7
bihouen *impers*	to behove *OE* behōfian
biknewen	to recognize *OE* becnāwan 7
bilimpen	to be suitable *OE* belimpan 3
biliuen	to leave *OE* belǣfan
binimen	to take away *OE* beniman 4
birde	birth; race, relatives *OE* gebyrd
birðene	burden *s OE* byrðen
biseken	to beseech *OE* besēcan
bisne	example *OE* bȳsen
bispel	example *G* Beispiel
bistolen *pp*	stolen *OE* (be)stelan 4
biswicen *pp*	deceived *OE* (be)swīcan
bit *3rd sg pres*	to bite *OE* bītan 1
bitacnen	to signify *OE* betācnian *s ME* taken(n)
biþenchen, -thynken *refl*	to seem, to think upon/over
biwiten	to take care of *OE* bewītan 1
biwokenn *pp*	awaken *OE* bewacian
biwunden *pp*	to tie up, to wind *OE* bewindan 3
blanchet	a sort of paint *OFr* blanche 'white'
bleðeliche *adv*	happily *s OE* blīðe
bliðe *adj*	happy *s OE* blīðe
bod	message *s OE* bēodan 2
bohte *pt*	bought *OE* bycgan - bōhte
boket	bucket
borenn *pp*	born *OE* beran 4
boru	borough *OE* burg
bosme	bosom
bot *conj*	but
boure bure	room *OE, ON* būr

bowen   to bow *OE* būgan 2

brad *adj*   broad *OE* brād

brech   breeches

bred brad   bread

brennen   to burn *OE* brennen

breoken   to break *OE* brecan 4

bret *3rd sg pres*   to roast *OE* brǣdan

breyden   to move *s* abruden *OE* bregdan

bricht *adj*   bright *OE* birht

brouthe broucte *pt*   brought *OE* bringan - brōhte

bruche   break through *OE* bryce

buten *conj*   except, unless

byen   to buy *OE* bycgan

bye *inf/subj*   to be

byggynge   buying *OE* bycgung

c

calsidoine   chalcedony *Fr* calcedoine

capoun   capon

caue   cave *OFr* cave

cellerer   who is in charge of a cellar *OFr* cellerier

ceðen *pl*   quarters

chasti   to chastise *cf ModE* chaste

chatel   property, chattel *OFr* chatel *L* capitale

chaunger   usurer *OFr* changeur

chesen   to choose *OE* cēosan 2

chilce   childishness

claðes *pl*   clothes *OE* clāð

clepien   to call *OE* cleopian

clone *adv*   entirely *OE* clǣne

clut   clout, rag *OE* clūt

cofe *adj*   active, brisk *OE* cāf

contrefetes   to forge *cf ModE* counterfeit

cote	cottage *OE* cot(e)
couel	basket *MHG* kuebel
couðe cuðe *pt*	could *OE* cūðe < cunnan
cunde *W*	kind *OE* cynde
cunn *W*	kin *s OE* cynn
curt	court *OFr* court
cuuenable *adj*	suitable *OFr* covenable
cwemen	to please *OE* cweman
cweðen	to say *OE* cweðan 5
cynerice	kingdom *s OE* rīce
cytryne	lemon *L* citrus

D

dade	deed *s OE* dǣd
dalf *pt*	to dig *OE* delfen 3
dar	to dare *OE* durran
dærnelike *adv*	secretly *OE* dierne 'dark'
dede *adj*	dead *OE* dēad
dehtren *pl*	daughter *OE* dōhtor
der *adj*	dear *OE* dīere
der	animal *OE* dēor
deren *impers*	to hurt *OE* derian
deruen	to afflict *OE* deorfan 3
deȝie	day *s OE* dæg
diadlich *K adj*	mortal
dierewurð *adj*	beloved, valuable *s* der
dihten diȝten	to set, to prepare *OE* dihtan *L* dictāre
dom	doom, judgement *s OE* dōm
dor	door *OE* duru
dorste *pt*	dared *OE* durran
draȝen	to drag *OE* dragan 6 - drōg
Drihhtin	Lord *OE* dryhten
drou *pt*	*s* draȝen

drunche *W*	a drink *OE* (ge)drinc

E

eald *adj*	old *s OE* eald
eauer *adv*	ever
ec eek eke *adv*	also
eche *adj*	eternal *s OE* ēce
echone *pron*	each one
eddre	adder
ede *pt*	went *s OE* ēode
eegel ennel	angel *OE* engel
eft *adv*	again
eft(sones)	immediately, straightaway
ehte	property *s* aihte
eie	awe *s OE* ege
elde	age *OE* ielde
ell *adv*	else
embe *prep*	about
ene *num*	one
eorðe erthe	earth *s OE* eorðe
er *adv*	before *s OE* ǣr
ernen	to run *s OE* iernan 3
erour *comp*	earlier *s* er
erðen	to dig *s* eorðe
erðliche *adj*	earthly
es *3rd pres sg*	is
et	at
euche *pron*	each
eue(n)like	equally *OE* efenlice

F

fa fo	foe *OE* fāh 'hostile'

faȝe foaȝe *adj*	coloured *OE* fāg
fald	fold for cattle
fallen	to fall *OE* feallan 7
faren	to go *OE* faran 6
fayn *adv*	with pleasure *s OE* fæg(e)n
fearen	to fear *OE* fǣran
feble *adj*	feeble *OFr* feble
fece	time
fechen	to fetch *OE* feccan
fehh	money *OE* feoh
feiren	to make beautiful (fair)
fele *adv*	many *OE* fela *G* viel
felen	to feel *OE* fēlan
fellen	to hide *OE* feol(h)an
felunge	feeling *s* felen
fend feont	fiend, enemy *OE* fēond
feorðe	fourth
fer	far *OE* fēor
fet *3rd sg pres*	to feed *OE* fēdan
fynen fine	to stop, to finish *Fr* finir
fint *3rd sg pres*	to find *OE* findan 3
fis	fish *OE* fisc
flen	to flee *OE* flēon 2
flote	sailor *s OE* flota
flour	flower *OFr* flour
flowen *pt pl*	to fly *OE* flēogan 2 (flugon)
fod	food *OE* fōda
fol	fool *OFr* fol
folhin folȝen	to follow *OE* folgian
fond *pt*	found *OE* fand *s* fint
fonge *pt*	received *OE* fōn 7 - feng
forbar *pt*	to forbear *OE* forberan 4
forbeden	to forbid *OE* forbēodan 2
forbude *subj*	to forbid *OE* forbēodan 2

fordon	to destroy *OE* fordōn
foren *adv*	in front of
forenn *pt pl*	to go *OE* faran 6
forgat *pt*	to forget *OE* forgietan 5
forleien	to commit adultery *OE* forlecgan 5
forleten	to abandon *s OE* forlǣtan 7
forlorn *pp*	lost *s OE* forlēosan 2
formemete	breakfast *OE* mete 'meal' *ModE meat*
forrdredde *pp*	terrified *s OE* drǣdan
forrholenn *pp*	concealed *OE* forhēlan 4
forsothe *adv*	indeed, truly *s OE* sōð
fort *adv*	forth
forwurðen	to destroy; to rot *s OE* forweorðan 3
foryeven	to forgive *s OE* forgiefan 5
forði	because
foul	foul, bird *OE* fugol
founde *pt*	found *OE* findan 3
fremde *adj*	foreign *G* fremd
friþþ	peace *s OE* friþ
fro *prep*	from
frofrenn	to comfort *OE* frōfrian
ful-i-tohe *pp*	well-behaved *cf OE* tēon 'pull, hold'
fulen	to foul *OE* fūlian
fullen *W*	to fill *OE* fyllan
fure *W*	fire *s OE* fȳr
furmeste *adv superl*	foremost

G, ȝ

gabbere	'chatter-box', a person who speaks a lot
gaddren	to gather *s OE* gaderian
gangen	to go *s OE* gangan
gan gon	to go *s OE* gān
gan gon *pt*	*s* ginnen

garsome — treasure *OE* gersume

gastelich *adj* — spiritual *s* gost

gastt — *s* gost

gat *pt* — got *s OE* gietan 5

ȝat gate — gate *OE* gæt

gateward — guard at the gate

ȝæfe ȝef *pt* — gave *s OE* giefan 5

ȝæn — against

ȝe ge *pron* — she

ȝearceon — to prepare *OE* gearcian

ȝearnen — to earn, to deserve *OE* geearnian

ȝebugon *pt pl* — to bow *OE* bīegan 2

ȝeclepien — to call *s OE* cleopian

ȝeferede(n) — company *OE* geferrǣden

ȝefere — companion *s OE* gefēra

ȝefo — a catch *s OE* fōn

ȝehatenn *pp* — called *s OE* gehātan 7

ȝelamp *pt* — to happen *s OE* gelimpan 3

ȝelaðien — to invite *G* einladen

gelest *pp* — extended *OE* gelǣstan 'to last'

ȝellen — to yell *OE* giellan 3

ȝeluwe ȝeolewe ȝallow *adj* — yellow *OE* geolu

ȝemeles *adj* — careless *OE* giēme 'care'

ȝemeten — to meet *OE* mētan

genge — company *OE* genge, *s OE* gangan *ModE* gang

ȝer — year *s OE* gēar

ȝesceod — distinction *OE* gescēad

ȝet ȝit *adv* — yet

geten *pp* — get *s OE* gietan 5

ȝeunge ȝonge *adj* — young *s OE* geong

geuelike

geuen ȝiuen — to give

ȝewer *pron* — anywhere *OE* gehwǣr

ȝho *pron* — she

ȝie *pron*	you
gief	gift *OE* gifu
ȝif ȝief gief *conj*	if
ȝielde	requital, retribution *cf ModE* yield
ȝierne ȝerne *adv*	eagerly *s OE* georn
ginnen	to begin; to do
ginne	contrivance, mechanism *cf Fr* engin
god goed *adj*	good *s OE* gōd
gome	care *ON* gaum
gome	game *OE* gaman *ModE* backgammon
gome	man *s OE* guma
gost	spirit, ghost *OE* gāst
gouen *pp*	given *s OE* giefan 5
grate *adj*	great *OE* grēat
griðð	peace *OE* grið
grom *adj*	angry *OE* gram/grom
gronge	grange *OFr* grange *cf L* grānum 'grain'
gulten	to incur guilt, to sin *OE* gyltan
ȝure *pron*	your
ȝuw *pron*	you

H

ha *pron*	she
haiward	farm bailiff
halen	to haul
hali halie *adj*	holy *OE* hālig
halp *pt*	help *OE* helpan 3
halt *3rd sg pres*	to hold *OE* healdan
ham	*s* hom
han *pl pres*	to have *ME* haven *OE* habban
hardilike *adv*	bravely *s OE* heardlīc
hare *pron poss 3rd pl*	their
hayen	to heighten, *cf ModE* high time

heaued hefed hæfedd heed	head *OE* heafod
heddre	*s* eddre
heere *adv*	here *OE* hēr
helfter	helper
hem *pron*	them; *s* ham
heorte	heart *s OE* heorte
herboru	harbour *ON* herebeorg
herborwed *pp*	harboured
herdnesse	hardness *OE* heard
here	praise *s OE* hereness
here	army *s OE* here
heres *pl*	hair *OE* hǣr
herknen	to listen, to harken
herrde *pt*	heard *s OE* hīeran
heruest	harvest *OE* hærfest
herunge	praise *s OE* hergan
hes *pron*	it
hewe	home; a domestic *OE* hīwa
hey *adj*	*s* hye
heðenesse	heathen times *OE* hǣðen 'heathen'
hindene	hind part
hine	domestic, relative *OE* hīna
hird	family *OE* hīrǣd *G* Heirat 'marriage'
hirde	shepherd *s OE* scēaphirde
hire *pron*	her
hlaford	lord *s OE* hlāford
hoeld *pt*	held *OE* healdan 7 - hēold
hok	hook *OE* hōc
hold *adj*	friendly *OE* hold
hole hule	hole *OE* hol
hom	home *s OE* hām
hongi	to hang *OE* hangian
hopen	to hope *OE* hopian
horde	hoard *OE* hord

hoten	to be called; to command *OE* hātan
hwile *conj*	while *OE* þā hwīle þā
hwon *pron*	when *OE* hwenne/hwonne
hwucche *pron*	which *OE* hwylc
hye *adj*	high *OE* heah
hælennde	Saviour *s OE* Hælend

I

iald *K adj*	old *OE* eald
i-biten	to bite, to try *OE* gebītan 1
i-brucen	to enjoy
i-clepede *pp*	called *s OE* cleopian
i-crope *pp*	crept *OE* crēopan 2
i-dreʒen	to suffer *OE* drēogan 2
i-ete *pp*	eaten *OE* etan 5
i-gult *pp*	to sin *OE* gegyltan
i-haten *pp*	called 7
i-heren	to hear *s OE* gehīeran
i-kaut *pp*	caught *ONFr* cachier
i-lad *pp*	led *s OE* lǣdan
ilche ilke *pron*	same *OE* īlca
i-leanett *pp*	lent *OE* lǣnan
i-leid *pp*	laid *OE* lecgan
i-leke *adj*	equal *OE* gelīca
i-leuen	to believe *OE* gelīefan
i-loke *pp*	locked *OE* lūcan 2
i-lome *adv*	often *s OE* gelome
i-mæn *adv*	together *OE* gemæn
incontynence	wantonness *cf OFr* incontinent *L* in continenti
inʒong	entrance, admission *s OE* gang
inntill *N prep*	to *ON* till *G* Ziel 'goal'
inou *adv*	enough; now *s OE* genōg
inwið *prep*	within

i-selðe   happiness *OE* gesælð

i-sien   to see *s OE* gesēon 5

i-smered *pp*   smeared *OE* smierwan

i-swinc   labour *s OE* geswinc

i-timien   to use the opportunity *OE* getimian

i-tohe *pp*   *s* ten *OE* tēon 2

iung *adj*   young *s OE* geong

i-whillc *pron*   every *s OE* gehwylc

i-wil   will *OE* gewill

i-wis *adj*   certain *OE* gewiss

i-wisse *adv*   certainly

i-wist   existence

i-wist *pt*   to understand *s OE* gewītan 1

i-wurðen   to happen *s OE* geweorðan

J

juel   jewel *AN* juel *L* jocus 'jest'

K

kare   trouble, care *OE* caru

kei   key *OE* cæg

kitten   to cut *OE* *cyttan

kiðenn   to show *s OE* cȳðan

kok   cock coc *OFr* coq *MedL* coccus *onom*

korn   corn *OE* corn *L* grānum *B* зърно

kunne *W*   kin *s OE* cynn

L

lacen   to lack *ON* lakr 'defective'

laden   to lead *s OE* lǣdan

lage laghe   law *OE* lagu

laten	to let *s OE* lǣtan 7
latst *adj superl*	latest, last *OE* læt
laumprei	kind of fish
laute *pt* < lacchen	caught *s OE* lǣccan
laðienge	feast *s* ȝelaðie
lechur	lecher *OFr* lichiere
leggen	to lay *OE* lecgan
leme	light *OE* lēoma
leme lime	limb *s OE* lim
lemman	*s* leofe + man
lenden	to land *OE* lendan
lenger lengour *adj comp*	longer *OE* lang
leofe leve *adj*	dear *s OE* lēof
leon	lion
lep lop *pt*	to leap *OE* hlēopan 7 - hlēp
leren	to teach *s OE* lǣran
lesen	to lose *s OE* lēosan 2
lestem *conj*	lest
leue	permission *OE* lēaf
leuere *adj comp*	*s* leofe
leyn *pres pl*	*s* leggen
leȝȝd *pt*	*s* leggen
liben	to live *s OE* libban
licham licome	body *s OE* līc, *OE* homa
liche	body *s OE* līc
liche	like *ON* līkr 'same', *OE* gelīc
licht *adj/adv*	light(ly) *OE* lēoht
lieue *adj*	*s* leofe
liggen	to lie *s OE* licgan
likerous *adj*	
lines *pl*	linen; flax *OE* līn
lipne	trust
listen *impers*	to like *s OE* lystan
liuenoðe	food, means of living *ON* lifnaðr

liþ *3rd sg pres* s liggen

lofe loff praise *s OE* lof

lok(i)en to look *s OE* lōcian

loken to lock *OE* lūcan

lome *adv* often *s OE* gelome

lop *pt* s lep

los loss *ON* los

lou *pt* < lahhen to laugh *OE* hl(i)ehhan 6 - hlōh

loupe loop, noose

loðen to loathe *OE* lāðian

loð *adj* loath *OE* lāð

lufe love *s OE* lufu

lumen *W* to shine *OE* lēoma 'light'

lusten *W* s listen

lyen to tell lies, to lie *OE* lēogan 2

M

maei kinsman *OE* mæȝ

maȝen mahen *pres pl* may *OE* magan

magti *adj* mighty *OE* mihtig

maistrie cunning *OFr* maistrie *s OE* mægester

manere way *AN* manere *L* manuārius 'do with the   hand'

mast *superl* most *OE* mǣst

meað moderation *OE* mǣð

meistren to act as master *s* maistrie

mest s mast

mete food *OE* mete

meten to meet *OE* mētan

mide *adv* in the middle

midelerd middelhard the earth *s OE* eard

miȝte might *OE* miht

mikell *N adv* s muchel

milce mercy *s OE* milts(e)

mire	ant *OE* mȳre
mirie *adj*	merry *OE* myrig
mirre	myrrh
mis-licen *impers*	to dislike *OE* mislician
mislich mistlice	various *OE* mislīc
mið (mid+wið) *prep*	with
mo *comp*	more *OE* mā
monslaȝen	murder, manslaughter *OE* manslaga
mor *comp*	more *OE* māra
moten moste *pt*	must *OE* mōtan
mowe	kinswoman *OE* mǣȝe
mowe muee muge muȝe	be able *OE* mugan/magan
muchel mochel *adv*	much *OE* mycel
munen	to warn, to remind *OE* munan
mus	mouse *OE* mūs
musestoch	mousetrap *s* mus + *OE* stoc 'frame'

N

natheles *conj*	nevertheless *OE* nā þy lǣs *L* nihilominus
naht nawt *pron*	*s* no(g)ht
neddre	adder *OE* næddre
nedle	needle *OE* nǣdl
ner *adj*	near *OE* nearra 'nearer', *s* ney
nete	cow, ox *OE* nēat
neth	nett *OE* nett
ney *adj*	nigh, near *OE* nēah
niȝt	night *OE* nīht
nimen	to take *OE* niman
no(g)ht *pron*	not; nought, nothing *OE* nāwiht
nom/nam nomen *pt*	*s* nimen
nome	name *s OE* nama
non	noon *OE* nōn *L* nōna 'ninth'
nou nu now nou *adv*	now *OE* nū

nouth nouðe nuðe *adv*   now *OE* nū þe
nout nowt *pron*   nothing *s* noght
nouðer *pron*   neither *OE* ne + ǣgðer
nurð   murmuring, noise

O

o *prep*   of
oȝðer   either *OE* ǣgðer
oc oh *conj*   but *s OE* ac
ofdrad offdredde   afraid *s OE* ofdrǣd
ofsei *pt*   to catch sight of *OE* ofsēon 5
ofþinken *impers*   to be displeased, to be disgusted
                      OE ofþyncan
ogen *pres pl*   ought to *OE* āgan
oh *pres sg*   *s* ogen
ohwider *adv*   anywhither, in any direction *OE* āhwiðer
onecle   onyx *OFr* onicle
onlepi *adj*   only *s OE* ānlepig
onnfasst *adv*   near *s OE* fæste
ope *adj*   open *OE* open
opwinden   to wind up *OE* upwindan 3
ore   mercy *s OE* ār
ouȝt *pron*   something *OE* āwiht
ouche   necklace, an ouch *OFr* nouche
ouerliggen   to lie upon *s OE* licgan
owen *adj*   own *s OE* āgen

P

palle   expensive cloth
panier   basket *OFr* panier
parage   peerage *OFr* per 'equal'
pardee *interj*   by God *OFr* par dē *L* per Deum

pening penie   penny *OE* peni(n)g

pike   pickaxe *OFr* pique

pine pyne   pain *OFr* peine

plyght *pp*   to pluck *OE* pluccian

poke   small sack, pocket *AN* poca

pond   pound *OE* pund

praien   to pray *OFr* preier

preef   proof *OFr* preve *L* proba

pris   price *OFr* pris

prively *adv*   secretly *OFr* pervē *L* prīvus 'private'

put(t)e *W*   pit *OE* pytt

Q

quað quod *pt*   to say *s OE* cweðan

qwemen   to please *OE* cwēman

R

rade *pt*   to read *OE* rǣdan 7

rade rede   advice *OE* rǣd

rapelike *adv*   hastily *ON* hrapa

rape   rope

reccnenn   to reckon *OE* recenian *G* rechnen

rechelese *adv*   careless *OE* reccan

redde radde *pt*   to read *s OE* rǣdan 7

rene   *s* reyn

rennen   to run *s OE* iernan *ON* renna

repen   to reap *s OE* ripan/repan

repple   rod

resoun   to talk reason into smbd *OF* raisoner

reue   baliff *cf ModE* sheriff

reuen   to rob *OE* reafian

rewen *impers*   to rue *OE* hrēowan

reyn　　　　　　　　　　rain *OE* re(g)n

rice *adj*　　　　　　　　rich *OE* rice

riche　　　　　　　　　　kingdom *s OE* rīce

rihten　　　　　　　　　to direct *OE* rihtan

ripen　　　　　　　　　 *s* repen

rith(e) riht *adj*　　　　　right *s OE* riht

rode　　　　　　　　　　cross *OE* rōd

s

sacren　　　　　　　　　to consecrate, to take an oath *OFr* sacrer

sad *adj*　　　　　　　　solid; sad *OE* sæd

sahh saugh *pt*　　　　　to see *s OE* sēon 5 - seah

saken　　　　　　　　　 to shake *OE* scacan 6

sal　　　　　　　　　　 *s* scal, schullen

same　　　　　　　　　　shame *s OE* sceamu

samenn *adj*　　　　　　same *ON* same

sammnenn　　　　　　　to gather *s OE* samnian

sape　　　　　　　　　　soap *OE* sāpe

sardoine　　　　　　　　sardonyx *< OFr*

sawle saule　　　　　　　soul *OE* sāwol

scal *pres sg*　　　　　　shall *s OE* sculan

scawere　　　　　　　　mirror *s OE* sceawian

scewie *subj*　　　　　　*s* shæwenn

scheren　　　　　　　　 to cut *s OE* scēar

s(c)hullen scholle scule　shall *s OE* sculan/sculon
　　　sulen sulle *inf/pres pl*

scolde solde *pt*　　　　 should *OE* sceolde

scrift　　　　　　　　　 confession *OE* scrift *ON* skript

se *adv*　　　　　　　　 so *OE* swā

seauinge seywinge　　　 showing *s OE* sceawian

sechen seken　　　　　　to seek *s OE* sēcan

sed　　　　　　　　　　 seed *OE* sēd

see　　　　　　　　　　 sea *s OE* sæ

seʒ(h)en *pt pl/pp*	to see *s OE* sēon 5
seke *adj*	*s* sike
selde *adv*	seldom *OE* seldan *G* selten
sellen	to sell *s OE* sellan
seluen seolf	self, selves *s OE* se(o)lf
sely *adj*	happy *OE* sēlig *s* iselðe
semblant	aspect, semblance *< Fr*
sen *pp*	to see *s OE* sēon 5
senne *K*	*s* synne
seowe sewen	to sow *s OE* sāwan
serewe	sorrow *OE* sorg
seten *pt pl*	to sit *OE* sittan 5
seðen seodþan *prep/adv*	*s* siðen
se-were	dam
seyn *pres pl/inf*	to say *s OE* secgan
sheres	pair of shears *s* scheren
shæwenn	to show *s OE* scēawian
si *pron f*	*s OE* Tables
siʒt	sight *OE* sihð
sibbe	sibling *s OE* sibb
sid	side *OE* side
siggen	*s* seyn
sihðe	vision, sight *OE* gesihð *G* Gesicht
sike *adj*	sick *OE* sēoc
siker *adj*	sure *OFris* siker *L* securus
simenel	fine sort of bread *< OFr*
simle *adv*	(for)ever, always *OE* simle
sithes siðe *pl*	times *s OE* sīð
siðen *adv*	later, since *OE* siððan
slaʒen	to kill *s OE* slēan
slakien	to slacken, to set free *OE* slacien
smeallunge	the sense of smell
smech	smoke *OE* smēc
smechunge	taste, flavour *cf ModE* smack *G* Geschmack

smere *adv*	scornfully *OE* bismer 'mockery'
smok	smock *OE* smoc *G* Schmuck
smurien *W*	to smear *OE* smyrian
smyten smoot	to hit, to smite *OE* smītan
sohvte *pt*	sought *OE* sēcan - sōhte
solden *pt pl*	*s* scolde
som soum *pron*	some *OE* sum
sometreadliche *adv*	in accord *OE* sōm 'concord'
sond	sand *OE* sand
sonden *pl*	dishes *OE* sand *s OE* sendan
sone *adv*	soon *s OE* sōna
sot	fool *OE* sott *OFr* sot 'drunkard'
soth soþe sot *adj*	true *s OE* sōð
sothely *adv*	truly *s* soth
sothfast *adj*	truthful *s* soth
sowel	savoury food *OE* sufol
sow	pig, sow *OE* sugu
spak *pt*	spoke *OE* specan 5 - spæc
splen	spleen *L* splēn
stant *3rd sg pres*	to stand *s OE* standan 6
staue	staff, stick *OE* stæf
stede	place *s OE* stede
sterre	star *s OE* steorra
stiarne *K adj*	stern, stiff *OE* stierne
stirten	to jump *ON* sterta
stok	*s* musestoch
ston	stone *OE* stān
stonk *pt*	to stink *OE* stincen 3
stor	incense *OE* stōr
strem	stream *OE* strēam
strengþden	to strengthen *s OE* strengð
strif	strife *OFr* estrif
strok *pt*	to run *ME* striken
sturfe *pt*	to die *OE* steorfan 3 *G* sterben

stynten	to cease *OE* styntan
sulle	shall *s* scullen
sunbende *W pl*	twists of sin *s OE* synn, *OE* bend
sune	son *s OE* sunu
sunen	to shun *OE* scunian
sunne	sun *s OE* sunne
sunne *W*	*s* synne
sunfulle *W*	sinful *s* synne
sur	shower *OE* scūr
suster *W*	sister *OE* sweostor *ON* systir
swa	so *s OE* swā
swart *adj*	black *G* schwarz
sweote *adj*	sweet *OE* swēte/swōte
swepe	whip *OE* swipe
swerien	to swear *OE* swerian 6(4)
swetelich	sweetly *s* sweote
sweuen	sleep, dream *s OE* swefn
swich swulc *pron*	such *OE* swylc
swike	mousetrap *OE* swice
swikel *adj*	treacherous, faithless *OE* swicol *ON* svikall
swink	labour *s OE* geswinc
swinken	to labour *s* swink
swiðe	very *s OE* swiðe
swogh *pt*	to swoon *OE* swōgan
swote *adj*	*s* sweote
synne	sin *s OE* synn
syrreue	sheriff *OE* scīrgerēfa

T

ta	*s* þa
takenn	token *s OE* tācn
tadde	toad *OE* tāda
tah tohh *conj*	*s* þah

tarye	to tarry
tær	*s* þær
tatt	*s* þat
techen	to teach *OE* tǣcan
ten	to lead, to go *OE* tēon 2
teȝȝ	they *ON* þeȝȝ
therwithal	in general
tho	*s* þa
tilden	to set a trap
tilen	to toil, to work *s OE* tilian
tobreke *pp*	broken down *s OE* tōbrocen
todraȝen	to draw out *OE* dragan 6
toȝeines *prep*	against
totwicchen	to tear apart (by twitching)
tour	tower *OFr* tur
trauaylen	to suffer, to be bothered *OFr* travailer
tre	tree *OE* trēo
trukien	to fail, to be lacking *OE* trucian
tuhten	to discipline *OE* tyhtan 'to train'
tuss *adv*	*s* þous

Þ

þa þo *adv*	then *OE* þā
þah *conj*	though, nevertheless *OE* þ ah
þai *pron*	they *ON* þeȝȝ
þanne *adv*	then, than
þance þonc	thought; thank *OE* þanc *G* Gedanke, Dank
þarf *pres sg*	to need *OE* þurfan - þorfte
þar *adv*	there *OE* þǣr
þas þos	those *s OE* Tables
þeaw	virtue *s OE* þēaw
þed þeoden *pl*	nation, people *OE* þēod
þef þeof þieue	thief

þei *conj*	*s* þah
þein	servant, thane *OE* þægn
þes *pron*	these *s OE* Tables
þene *pron*	*s OE* Tables
þeo *pron*	*s OE* Tables
þere *pron*	*s OE* Tables
þi þin *pron*	*s OE* Tables
þeos *pron*	*s OE* Tables
þiesternesse	dungeon *s OE* þēostru
þinchen	to think *OE* þyncan
þon þen *adv*	then *OE* þonne
þore	*s* þar
þou *pron*	thou *s OE* Tables
þouthe þuhte þo(h)ute *pt*	thought *OE* þencan - þōhte
þohhweðære *conj*	although *OE* þeahwæðere
þolien	to suffer *s OE* þolian
þorgh þourgh þourȝ *prep*	through *OE* þurh
þoru *adj*	thorough
þourt *pt*	*s* þarf
þous *adv*	thus *OE* þus
þriste *adj*	bold *OE* þryste
þusgate *adv*	this way

U

ufele vuel *W*	evil *OE* ȳfel
ulcne *W Acc*	same *OE* ilca/ylca
uncoð *adj*	uncouth, unknown, foreign
vnderfon	to accept, understand *s OE* underfōn 7
underȝeiten	to understand *OE* undergietan 5
underðeod	subject *s OE* underþēodan
unhalðe	sickness *OE* unhǣlð
unholde	disobedience, ungratefulness *s* hold
vnnet *adj*	useless *s OE* unnytt

vnselliche *adj*	common *OE* seldlic 'rare, strange' *s* selde
untohe	unrestrained *OE* tēon 2 'to pull'
unwiht	monster *OE* wiht 'creature'
unwine	enemy *OE* wine 'friend'
unwr(e)aste *adj*	infirm *s OE* unwrēst
unþeaw	bad manner, vice *s OE* þēaw
ureisun	prayer *OFr* oreisun

V

uastinge *K*	fasting
ueree *K*	fire *OE* fȳr
verray *adj*	real *OFr* verai
verrene *K*	foreign *OFr* forein *L* forēs 'door'
uisiti	to visit *OFr* visiter *L* visitare
vox *K*	fox

W

wa *pron*	who *OE* whā
wah	walls *OE* wāh
wake-menn	watchman
wakien	to stay awake *s OE* wacian
walde *pt*	would *OE* willan
wan *pt*	to win *OE* winnan 3
wand wond *pt*	to wrap, to wind *OE* windan 3
wane(n)	to wane, to lessen *OE* wanian
war *adj*	wary *OE* (ge)wær
ward *prep*	toward *OE* toweard
ware	ware, goods *OE* waru
warschipe	worship *s OE* wurðscipe
wassen	to wash *OE* wæscan
wastel	gateau *OFr* wastel
wat wet *pron*	what *OE* hwæt

waxen wexen	to grow, to wax *OE* weaxan 7
wealden	to wield, to control *OE* wealdan *B* владея
wearliche *adv*	warily *s* war
wed	weed *OE* wǣd
weder	weather *OE* weder
wen *pron*	when *s OE* Tables
wendenn wente *pt*	to turn, to go *s OE* wendan
wenen	to think, to suppose *OE* wēnan
wennchell	child *cf ModE* wench
wep	weep
were	man *s OE* wer
werelld	world *s OE* woruld
werm *K* wirm	*s* wurm
werre	war *AN* werre *OFr* guerre
werste	worst *s OE* wyrst
werð *pt*	became *OE* weorðan 3
weste	*s* wiste
wete	wheet *OE* hwǣte
whulche *W*	which *OE* hwylc
widerwardnesse	opposition *OE* wiðerweard
wiit	wit *OE* witt
wile	while, time *OE* hwīl
wiles *adv*	while *s* wile
win	wine *OE* wīn *L* vīnum
wine	friend *s OE* wine
wissunge	instruction *s OE* wīse
wiste *pt*	*s* witen
wite wyte	punishment, penalty *s OE* wīte
witen[1]	to know *OE* witan *pret-pres*
witen[2]	to keep, to see *OE* wītan 1 - wāt
witerr *adj*	evident *ON* vitr
wod *adj*	mad *OE* wōd
wode wude	wood *s OE* wudu
wol	will

wone	custom *OE* wuna
woned *pp*	accustomed *s* wone
woso *pron*	whosoever
wote *pres sg*	to know *s* witen[1] *OE* wāt
wous *K adj*	eager, ready *OE* fūs
wox *K*	*s* vox
wraste *adj*	powerful, firm *OE* wrǣst
wreccheliȝ *adv*	miserably *s* wrichede
wreke *adj*	avenged *s OE* wrecan
wrenche	twist, deceit *s* wrenchen
wrenchen	to twist, to wiggle *OE* wrencan
wrichede *pp*	wreched *OE* wrecca 'exile'
writt	writing, document; scripture *OE* (ge)writ
wrohhte wrouȝte worht *pt*	worked *OE* wyrcean
wule *W*	will
wullderr	glory *s OE* wuldor
wonen wunen	to live, to dwell *OE* wunian *G* wohnen
wundenn *pt pl*	to wind *OE* windan 3
wurm	worm *OE* wyrm
wurrðe	worth, honour *s OE* wyrð/weorð
wurrðenn	to become *OE* weorðan 3
wurrðminnt	honour *s* wurrðe
wylem *adv*	whilom, once *OE* hwīlum

Y

yaf *pt*	gave *s OE* giefan 5
yede *pt*	went *OE* ēode
yeft *3rd sg pres*	to give *s OE* giefan 5
yefte	gift *ON* gipt + *OE* giefan 5
yemernesse	sadness, misery *OE* gēomor 'miserable'
yen *pl*	eyes *OE* ēage

TABLES

Contents

Old English letter–sound correspondences

Vowels

All OE vowels – monophthongs and diphthongs – can be short or long. Vowel length is not usually indicated in authentic texts. In transcription, vowel length is marked with a length mark after a monophthong or the first element of a diphthong, e.g. e.g. [ɑː, eːo]; alternatively, a macron is sometimes used, e.g. [ā, ēo]. While the exact phonetic values of OE vowels are a matter of continuing debate, a rather conservative and straightforward approach is to transcribe them as they usually appear in OE orthography.

Monophthongs

LETTERS	PHONETIC SYMBOLS	EXAMPLES
<A a>	[ɑ] and [ɑː]	OE *faran* 'to go'; OE *hām* 'home'
<Æ æ> 'ash'	[æ] and [æː]	OE *wæter* 'water'; OE *sǣ* 'sea'
<E e>	[e] and [eː]	OE *bedd* 'bed'; OE *hēr* 'here'
<I i>	[i] and [iː]	OE *mist* 'mist'; OE *rīdan* 'to ride'
<O o>	[o] and [oː]	OE *hors* 'horse'; OE *gōd* 'good'
<U u>	[u] and [uː]	OE *full* 'full'; OE *mūs* 'mouse'
<Y y>	[y] and [yː] (*also transcribed* [ü, üː])	OE *fyllan* 'to fill'; OE *mȳs* 'mice'

Diphthongs

LETTERS	PHONETIC SYMBOLS	EXAMPLES
<io> (*Anglian*)	[io] and [iːo]	OE (Angl.) *hiorde* 'shepherd'; OE (Angl.) *līoht* 'light'
<eo>	[eo] and [eːo]	OE *heorte* 'heart'; OE *dēop* 'deep'
<ea>	[eɑ] and [eːɑ]	OE *eald* 'old'; OE *hēah* 'high'
<ie> (*West Saxon*)	[ie] and [iːe]	OE (WS) *hierde* 'shepherd'; OE (WS) *hīeran* 'to hear'

Consonants

The OE graphemes <B b, D d, L l, M m, P p, R r, T t, X x> are invariably pronounced [b, d, l, m, p, r, t, ks], respectively. The letters 'thorn' <Þ þ> and 'eth' (or 'that') <Ð ð> are interchangeable (both can be voiceless or voiced). The OE letters 'wynn' <Ƿ ƿ> and 'yogh' <Ȝ ȝ> are normally replaced in modern editions with <W w> and <G g>, respectively.

Most OE consonants can be geminate (= double), e.g. OE *habban* [ˈhabban] 'to have'. Double fricatives are always voiceless, e.g. OE *siþþan* [ˈsiθθɑn] 'since'.

LET-TERS	PHONETIC SYMBOLS	ENVIRONMENT	EXAMPLES
<C c>	[tʃ]	before or after a front V	OE *cild* 'child', OE *ic* 'I'
	[k]	in all other cases	OE *cū* 'cow'
<F f>	[v]	between Vs or voiced Cs	OE *drīfan* 'to drive'
	[f]	in all other cases	OE *æfter* 'after'
<G g>	[ʝ] or [j]	before or after a front V	OE *gēar* 'year', OE *dæg* 'day'
	[ɣ]	between any V and a back V; word-finally after a back V; after [r] or [l]	OE *dragan* 'to draw', OE *burg* 'city, borough'
	[g]	word-initially before a back V or a C; after [n]	OE *gān* 'to go', OE *bringan* 'to bring'
<H h>	[h]	word-initially before any V or C	OE *hē* 'he', OE *hnutu* 'nut'
	[ç]	after a front V	OE *niht* 'night'
	[x]	in all other cases	OE *sohte* 'sought'
<N n>	[ŋ]	before a velar C	OE *drincan* 'drink'
	[n]	in all other cases	OE *nefa* 'nephew'
<S s>	[z]	between Vs or voiced Cs	OE *rīsan* 'to rise'
	[s]	in all other cases	OE *hūs* 'house'
<Þ þ>, <Ð ð>	[ð]	between Vs or voiced Cs	OE *eorþe* 'earth'
	[θ]	in all other cases	OE *þū* 'thou'
<sc>	[ʃ]	*(always)*	OE *fisc* 'fish'
<cg>	[dʒ]	*(always)*	OE *brycg* 'bridge'

Intervocalic voicing of <f, s, þ> does not take place if the fricative is at the beginning of a stem and preceded by a prefix, e.g. OE *gefeoht* [ʝeˈfeoxt] 'fought', *gesēon* [ʝeˈseːon] 'seen'. Voicing is not contrastive for OE fricatives but should be indicated in the transcription of OE texts.

If the vowels preceding and following <c, g> disagree in backness, as a rule the one following takes precedence, e.g. OE *āces* [ˈaːtʃes] 'oak (GEN SG)' but *brecan* [ˈbrekan] 'break'.

The pronunciation of <c> is also [k] when the letter is followed by a front vowel which is the result of *I*-Umlaut, e.g. OE *cynning* [ˈkynniŋg] 'king', *cēpan* [ˈkeːpan] 'keep'.

<g> is not affected by a preceding [n] across morpheme boundaries: OE *onginnan* [onˈʝinnan] 'begin' (prefix *on-).

The Old English phonological system

Vowel phonemes

Monophthongs

	FRONT		(CENTRAL)	BACK	
	UNROUNDED	ROUNDED		UNROUNDED	ROUNDED
HIGH (CLOSE)	i iː	y yː			u uː
MID	e eː				o oː
LOW (OPEN)	æ æː			ɑ ɑː	

Diphthongs

OE /eo eːo, eɑ eːɑ/

WS /ie iːe/ (IU of /e(ː)o, e(ː)ɑ/)

Anglian /io iːo/

Consonant phonemes

	LABIAL		CORONAL			DORSAL		
	BILABIAL	LABIO-DENTAL	DENTAL	ALVEOLAR	PALATO-ALVEOLAR	PALATAL	VELAR	GLOTTAL
PLOSIVES	p pp b bb			t tt d dd			k kk g —	
AFFRICATES					tʃ ttʃ dʒ —			
FRICATIVES		f ff (v)/f/	θ θθ (ð)/θ/	s ss (z)/s/	ʃ — —	(ç çç)/x xx/ (ʝ)/g/	x xx (ɣ)/g/	(h)/x/ —
NASALS	m mm			n nn			(ŋ)/n/	
APPROXIMANTS	w —			r rr		j —	w —	
LATERAL APPROXIMANT				l ll				

Consonant length (gemination) is contrastive and should be marked in transcription; all consonants except /g, dʒ, ʃ, w/ can be long (double).

The sounds shown in brackets ( ) are allophones of the phonemes in subscript $_{//}$.

/w/ is listed in two columns in the table, as it requires a double articulation: it is a (voiced) labial–velar approximant.

Alternative transcriptions for [ç] and [ʝ] are [xʲ / x'] and [ɣʲ / ɣ'], respectively.

Word stress

WORD STRUCTURE	STRESSED SYLL.	EXAMPLES
no prefix	**root**	OE *síngan* 'sing', *cýnning* 'king'
verb/adverb with prefix	**root**	OE *ongínnan* 'begin', *wiþstándan* 'withstand', *ofercúman* 'overcome'
noun/adjective with prefix	**prefix**	OE *óndswaru* 'answer', *tṓdāl* 'division', *úndēop* 'shallow'
except *ge-, be-, for-* (never stressed)	**root**	OE *gemýnd* 'mind', *bēhéfe* 'useful', *forwýrd* 'damage'
compounds	primary: **1st root** secondary: **2nd root**	OE *mṓd-cèaru* 'grief', *gṓd-spèll* 'gospell', *glǽd-mòd* 'pleasant'

Old English transcription

The transcription of OE should reflect all phonemic contrasts, as well as some important allophonic detail. Length is contrastive for both vowels and consonants. Whenever there is a double consonant in the orthography, it should be transcribed as such, e.g. OE *eallne* ['eallne]. If long vowels are not already marked in the text you're dealing with, you'll need to look each word up in the OE Glossary or any dictionary of OE. Word stress should also be marked. The consonantal allophones that should be transcribed are voiced and voiceless fricatives, [k ~ tʃ], [g ~ ɣ ~ ʝ], [h ~ x ~ ç], [n ~ ŋ]. Initial and final fricatives in function words and inflectional endings are not yet voiced in OE, e.g. OE *þæt* [θæt], OE *his* [his], OE *mūþas* ['muːðas]. The velar nasal [ŋ] is not a phoneme in OE: it only occurs as an allophone of /n/ before [k] or [g]. There is no phonological reduction of unstressed vowels in OE, i.e. there is no neutral mid central vowel [ə]. Word stress should be marked in all polysyllabic words.

Since subphonemic detail is also included, the transcription should be enclosed in square brackets, [ ] (not slants, / /).

Sample transcription

OE *Þissum þus gedone, se cyng Willelm cearde ongean to Normandige.*

['θissum θus ʝe'doːne ǀ seː kyŋg 'willelm 'tʃearde on'ʝean toː 'normandiʝe]

Reowlic þing he dyde, ⁊ *reowlicor him gelamp. Hu reowlicor?*

['reːowlitʃ θiŋg heː 'dyde ǀ and (ond) 'reːowlikor him ʝe'lamp ǀ huː 'reːowlikor]

Him geyfelade ⁊ *þet him stranglice eglade. Hwæt mæg ic teollan?*

[him ʝe'yvelade and θet him 'straŋglitʃe 'eʝlade ǀ hwæt mæʝ itʃ 'teollan]

Se scearpa deað þe ne forlet ne rice menn ne heane, seo hine genam. (...)

[seː 'ʃearpa deːaθ θeː ne for'leːt ne 'riːtʃe menn ne 'heːane ǀ seːo 'hine ʝe'nam]

Se þe wæs ærur rice cyng 7 maniges landes hlaford,

[se: θe: wæs ˈæːrur ˈriːtʃe ˈkyŋg and ˈmanijes ˈlandes ˈhlaːvord]

he næfde þa ealles landes buton seofon fotmæl;

[he: ˈnævde θɑ: ˈealles ˈlandes ˈbuːton ˈseovon ˈfoːtmæːl]

7 se þe wæs hwilon gescrid mid golde 7 mid gimmum,

[and se: θe: wæs ˈhwiːlon ɟeˈʃriːd mid ˈgolde and mid ˈɟimmum]

he læg þa oferwrogen mid moldan.

[he: læɟ θɑ: ˈoverwroɟen mid ˈmoldɑn]   (from the *Peterborough Chronicle*)

Old English vowel changes

OE long diphthongs

PG		OE		PG		OE
*[iu]	>	[iːo]				
*[eu]	>	[eːo]		*[ei]	>	[iː]
*[au]	>	[eːɑ]		*[ai]	>	[ɑː]

OE short diphthongs

Breaking (West Saxon)

(i)   EOE [i / e] > OE [eo]
(ii) EOE [æ] > OE [ea]   / ___ [r]C / [l]C / [x]

Examples (i) WS *Peohtas* 'Picts' < *Pihtas*; *heorte* 'heart', *feorr* 'far', *seolh* [seolx] 'seal (animal)', *feoh* 'cattle', *feohtan* 'to fight' (< [e]); (ii) *earm* 'arm', *eald* 'old', *eall* 'all', *seah* 'saw (SG)', *eahta* 'eight'.

[l] + any consonant causes breaking of [æ], but only [lx] can break [e]; cf. OE *helpan* 'help' (INFIN) but *healp* (PAST 1,3SG).

Back Umlaut (most common in Anglian; sometimes called 'velarisation')

(i)   EOE [i / e] > OE [eo]
(ii) EOE [æ] > OE [ea]   / ___ C V^BACK

Examples (i) OE *seofon* < *sifon* 'seven', *heofon* 'heaven' < *hefon*, Angl. *feola* 'many' (WS fela); (ii) OE *ealu* 'ale' < *ælu, Angl. *cearu* [ˈtʃearu] 'care' (WS caru [ˈkaru]) < *cæru.

Palatal Diphthongisation (West Saxon; sometimes called 'palatalisation')

(i) EOE [e(:)] > OE [i(:)e]	
(ii) EOE [æ(:)] > OE [e(:)ɑ]	$C^{\text{PALATAL/PALATOALVEOLAR*}}$ ___ (* [j̇], [ʃ] or [tʃ])

Examples (i) WS *giefan* 'give' (Angl. *gefan*), WS *scield* 'shield' (Angl. *sceld*); (ii) WS *geaf* 'gave (SG)' (Angl. *gæf*), WS *ceaster* 'castle' (Angl. *cæster*), WS *sceal* 'shall (SG)' (Angl. *scæl*).

I-Umlaut (*I*-Mutation)

(i) EOE V^{BACK} > OE V^{FRONT}	
(ii) EOE $\breve{V}^{\text{LOW}}$ > OE $\breve{V}^{\text{MID,FRONT}}$	___ (C)[i/j]

y	←	u	y:	←	u:	i(:)o	>
e	←	o	e:	←	o:	e(:)o	>
↑	⭦						i(:)e
æ		ɑ	æ:	←	ɑː	e(:)ɑ	>

CHANGE	EXAMPLE
EOE *[u] > OE [y]	OE *fyllan* 'to fill' < **fuljan*; cf. OE *full* 'full'
EOE *[u:] > OE [y:]	OE *tȳnan* 'enclose' < **tūnjan*; cf. OE *tūn* 'enclosure'
EOE *[o] > OE [e]	OE *dehter* 'daughter' (DAT SG) < **dohtir*; cf. OE *dohtor* (NOM SG)
EOE *[o:] > OE [e:]	OE *fēt* 'feet' (NOM PL) < **fōti-*; cf. OE *fōt* 'foot' (NOM SG)
EOE *[ɑ] > OE [e]	OE *men(n)* 'men' (NOM PL) < **mani-*; cf. OE *man(n)* 'man' (NOM SG)
EOE *[ɑ:] > OE [æ:]	OE *hǣlan* 'heal' < **hāljan*; cf. OE *hāl* 'whole'
EOE *[æ] > OE [e]	OE *hell* 'hell' < **hælju*
EOE *[eo] > OE [ie]	OE *sciertest* 'shortest' (SUPERL) < **sceortist*; cf. OE *sceort* 'short'
EOE *[e:o] > OE [i:e]	OE *frīend* 'friends' (NOM PL) < **frēondi-*; cf. *frēond* 'friend' (NOM SG)
EOE *[eɑ] > OE [ie]	OE *ieldra* 'older/elder' (COMPAR) < **ealdira*; cf. OE *eald* 'old'
EOE *[e:ɑ] > OE [i:e]	OE *cīepan* 'buy' < **cēapjan*; cf. OE *cēap* 'price'

IU is typically found in class I WVs, 2ND and 3RD PERS PRES INDIC of SVs; *ja-*, *jō-* and *i*-stem nouns; DAT SG and NOM PL of root-stem nouns; COMPAR and SUPERL of adjectives.

Late OE lengthening before homorganic clusters

OE $\breve{V}$ > LOE $\bar{V}$ / ___ [ld/nd/mb] #/V*   (* word boundary or vowel)

Examples OE *cild* 'child' > LOE *cīld* (but OE *cildru* 'children', with 3 Cs), OE *feld* 'field' > LOE *fēld*, OE *wolde* 'would (SG)' > LOE *wōlde*, Anglian *cald* 'cold' > LOE *cāld*, OE *findan – gefunden* 'find – found' > LOE *findan – gefūnden*, OE *climban* 'climb' > LOE *clīmban*.

Old English nouns

a- (*ja-*, *wa-*) stems (MASC, NEUT)

		SIMPLE *A*-STEMS			JA-STEMS (MASC)	WA-STEMS (NEUT)
		MASCULINE		NEUTER		
			stem-final fricative	*short syll.*	*long syll.*		
SG	N	stān|Ø	hlāf|Ø [hlɑːf]	scip|Ø	scēap|Ø	her|e	sear|u, |o
	A						
	G	stān|es	hlāf|es	scip|es	scēap|es	her|i(g)-es	sear|w-es
	D	stān|e	hlāf|e	scip|e	scēap|e	her|i-e	sear|w-e
PL	N	stān|as	hlāf|as [hlɑːvɑs]	scip|u, |o	scēap|Ø	her|i(g)-as	sear|u, |o
	A						
	G	stān|a	hlāf|a	scip|a	scēap|a	her|i(g)-a	sear|w-a
	D	stān|um	hlāf|um	scip|um	scēap|um	her|i(g)-um	sear|w-um
		stone	*loaf* 'bread'	*ship*	*sheep*	'army'	'device'

ō- (*jō-*, *wō-*) stems (FEM)

		SIMPLE *Ō*-STEMS		JŌ-STEMS	WŌ-STEMS
		short syll.	*long syll.*		
SG	N	car|u, |o	lār|Ø	synn|Ø	scead|u, |o
	A	car|e	lār|e	synn|e	scead|w-e
	G				
	D				
PL	N	car|a	lār|a	synn|a	scead|w-a
	A				
	G				
	D	car|um	lār|um	synn|um	scead|w-um
		care	*lore* 'learning'	*sin*	*shade, shadow*

i-stems (MASC, NEUT, FEM)

		MASCULINE		NEUTER		FEMININE
		short syll.	*long syll.*	*short syll.*	*long syll.*	
SG	N	win|**e**	dǣl|**∅**	sper|**e**	æsc|**∅**	tīd|**∅**
	A					
	G	win|**es**	dǣl|**es**	sper|**es**	æsc|**es**	tīd|**e**
	D	win|**e**	dǣl|**e**	sper|**e**	æsc|**e**	
PL	N	win|**e**	dǣl|**as**	sper|**u**, |**o**	æsc|**∅**	tīd|**e**, |**a**
	A					
	G	win|**i(g)-a**	dǣl|**a**	sper|**a**	æsc|**a**	tīd|**a**
	D	win|**um**	dǣl|**um**	sper|**um**	æsc|**um**	tīd|**um**
		'friend'	*deal* 'part'	*spear*	*ash*	*tide* 'time, hour'

u-stems (MASC, FEM)

		short syll.	*long syll.*
SG	N	sun|**u**, |**o**	feld|**∅**
	A		
	G	sun|**a**	feld|**a**
	D		
		son	*field*

		short syll.	*long syll.*
PL	N	sun|**a**	feld|**a**
	A		
	G		
	D	sun|**um**	feld|**um**

n-stems (MASC, NEUT, FEM; also called 'weak nouns')

		MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
SG	N	hunt|**a**	tung|**e**	ēar|**e**
	A	hunt|**an**	tung|**an**	
	G			ēar|**an**
	D			
PL	N	hunt|**an**	tung|**an**	ēar|**an**
	A			
	G	hunt|**en-a**	tung|**en-a**	ēar|**en-a**
	D	hunt|**um**	tung|**um**	ēar|**um**
		hunter	*tongue*	*ear*

Root stems (MASC, FEM; also called 'athematic nouns')

		MASC	FEMININE				MASC	FEMININE
SG	N	fōt	burg		PL	N	fḗt	b**yr**(**i**)g
	A					A		
	G	fōt|**es**	burg|**e**			G	fōt|**a**	burg|**a**
	D	fḗt	b**yr**(**i**)g			D	fōt|**um**	burg|**um**

foot   *borough* 'city'

r-stems (MASC; kinship terms)

		MASCULINE	FEMININE							
SG	N	brōþor|Ø	dohtor|Ø	mōdor|Ø		PL	N	brōþor|Ø	dohtor|Ø	mōdr|**a**
	A						A			
	G						G	brōþr|**a**	dohtr|**a**	
	D	brḗþer	de**h**ter	mḗder			D	brōþr|**um**	dohtr|**um**	mōdr|**um**

brother   *daughter*   *mother*

s-stems (NEUT)

SG	N	cild|Ø 'child'		PL	N	cild|**r-u**
	A				A	
	G	cild|**es**			G	cild|**r-a**
	D	cild|**e**			D	cild|**r-um**

Old English *adjectives*

The strong (indefinite) declension

		MASCULINE	NEUTER	FEMININE
SG	N	gōd|∅ (blæc|∅)	gōd|∅ (blæc|∅)	gōd|∅ (blac|**u**)
	A	gōd|**ne**		gōd|**e**
	G	gōd|**es**		gōd|**re**
	D	gōd|**um**		
	I	gōd|**e**		
PL	N	gōd|**e** (blæc|**e**)	gōd|∅ (blæc|**u**)	gōd|**a** (blæc|**a**), |**e**
	A			
	G	gōd|**ra**		
	D	gōd|**um**		

long syll. *good* (short syll. *black*)

OE *eall* 'all', *fēawe* 'few', *genōg* 'enough, sufficient', *OE manig* 'many, numerous', *ōþer* 'other, second' are **always strong**.

The weak (definite) declension

		MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
SG	N	gōd|**a**	gōd|**e**	gōd|**e**
	A			gōd|**e**
	G	gōd|**an**		gōd|**an**
	D			gōd|**an**

(all genders)

PL	N	gōd|**an**
	A	gōd|**an**
	G	gōd|**ra**, |**ena**
	D	gōd|**um**

Used with demonstrative, possessive and genitive determiners. OE *ilca* 'same', comparatives and superlatives, ordinal numerals (except *ōþer*) are **always weak**.

WEAK (DEFINITE)	STRONG (INDEFINITE)
OE *sē blinda man* 'the/that blind man'	OE *blind man* 'a blind man'
OE *þæt gōde land* 'the/that good land'	OE *gōd land* 'good land'
OE *þā hāligan lārēowas* 'the/those holy teachers'	OE *hālige lārēowas* 'holy teachers'

Degrees of comparison

OE *heard* 'hard', COMPAR *heard**ra**,* SUPERL *heard**ost***

With *I*-Umlaut

eald 'old'	***ie**ld**ra***	***ie**ld**est***
hēah 'high'	***hīe**ra*	***hīe**h**st***
lang/long 'long'	*leng**ra***	*leng**est***
strang/strong 'strong'	*streng**ra***	*streng**est***
nēah 'near'	*nēa**rra*** (> ModE *near*; no IU)	*nīe**h**st* (> ModE *next*)

Suppletive comparatives and superlatives:

gōd 'good'	*bettra*	*betst*
	sēlra	*sēlest*
lȳtel 'little, small'	*lǣssa*	*lǣst*
mycel 'much, many, big'	*māra*	*mǣst*
ȳfel 'bad, evil'	*wiersa*	*wierst*

Old English pronouns and determiners

Personal pronouns

		SG	DUAL	PL			SG	DUAL	PL
1ST PERS	N	ic	wit	wē	2ND PERS	N	þū	git	gē
	A	mē, mec	unc(it)	ūs(ic)		A	þē, þec	inc(it)	ēow(ic)
	G	mīn	uncer	ūre		G	þīn	incer	ēower
	D	mē	unc	ūs		D	þē	inc	ēow

		MASC SG	NEUT SG	FEM SG	PL
3RD PERS	N	hē	hit	hēo	hīe, hī(g)
	A	hi**ne**		hīe, hī(g)	
	G	hi**s**		hi(e)**re**	hi(e)**ra**
	D	hi**m**			hi**m**

The accusative forms of OE personal pronouns can be used in a **reflexive function**.

In LOE, the genitive forms of personal pronouns started to be declined as strong adjectives and thus formed the class of **possessive determiners and pronouns**.

Demonstrative pronouns and determiners

Type I (specifying)

	MASC SG	NEUT SG	FEM SG	PL
N	sē	þæt	sēo	þā
A	þone		þā	
G	þæs			þāra, þǣra
D	þǣm, þām		þǣre	þǣm, þām
I	þȳ, þon, þē			

Type II (deictic)

	MASC SG	NEUT SG	FEM SG	PL
N	þes	þis	þēos	þās
A	þisne		þās	
G	þisses			þissa
D	þissum		þisse	þissum
I	þȳs			

The interrogative pronoun/determiner

	MASC/FEM SG	NEUT SG
N	hwā	hwæt
A	hwone, hwæne	
G	hwæs	
D	hwǣm, hwām	
I	hwǣm, hwām	hwȳ, hwon, hū

Adjectives, phrases and interrogative pronouns used as 'indefinite pronouns/determiners'

hwā, hwæt (1) who, what; (2) anyone, any one
  gehwā each, everyone, someone
  swā hwā/hwæt swā whoever/whatever

hwæþer (1) which of two; (2) either, both
  gehwæþer both
  swā hwæþer swā whichever

hwylc, hwelc (1) which of many; (2) any, anyone
  gehwylc each
  swā hwylc swā whichever
  nāthwylc someone, something (literally 'I don't know who/which')

ǣlc 'each', *ǣnig* 'any', *eall* 'all', *man* 'one', *nān* 'none ', *sum* 'some, a certain'

Old English verbs

Inflections and conjugation

					PRESENT		PAST	
							STRONG	WEAK
INFINITIVE	**-an**		INDICATIVE	1 SG	**-e**		**-ø**	*-D*|**e**
				2 SG	**-(e)st**		**-e**	*-D*|**est**
INFLECTED				3 SG	**-(e)þ**		**-ø**	*-D*|**e**
INFINITIVE	**-anne/-enne**			PL	**-aþ**		**-on**	*-D*|**on**
IMPERATIVE	SG	**-ø, -e, -a**	SUBJUNCTIVE	SG	**-e**		**-e**	**-e**
	PL	**-aþ**		PL	**-en**		**-en**	**-en**
			PARTICIPLE		**-ende**	ge- **-en**		ge- **-e**|*D*, **-o**|*D*/**-a**|*D*

D: dental suffix (*-d-* or *-t-*).
The strong verb 2ND PERS SG PAST INDIC and the PAST SUBJUNCTIVE are formed with the 'PAST PL' stem.

		STRONG	WEAK I		WEAK II
PRESENT	1 SG	help|**e**	temm|**e**	cēp|**e**	luf|**i(g)**-**e**
	2 SG	hilp|**st**	tem|**(e)st**	cēp|**(e)st**	luf|**ast**
	3 SG	hilp|**þ**	tem|**(e)þ**	cēp|**(e)þ**	luf|**aþ**
	PL	help|**aþ**	temm|**aþ**	cēp|**aþ**	luf|**i(g)**-**aþ**
	SUBJ SG	help|**e**	temm|**e**	cēp|**e**	luf|**i(g)**-**e**
	SUBJ PL	help|**en**	temm|**en**	cēp|**en**	luf|**i(g)**-**en**
	IMP SG	help	tem|**e**	cēp	luf|**a**
	IMP PL	help|**aþ**	temm|**aþ**	cēp|**aþ**	luf|**i(g)**-**aþ**
PAST	1 SG	he**a**lp	tem|**ed**|**e**	cēp|**t**|**e**	luf|**od**|**e**
	2 SG	h**u**lp|**e**	tem|**ed**|**est**	cēp|**t**|**est**	luf|**od**|**est**
	3 SG	he**a**lp	tem|**ed**|**e**	cēp|**t**|**e**	luf|**od**|**e**
	PL	h**u**lp|**on**	tem|**ed**|**on**	cēp|**t**|**on**	luf|**od**|**on**
	SUBJ SG	h**u**lp|**e**	tem|**ed**|**e**	cēp|**t**|**e**	luf|**od**|**e**
	SUBJ PL	h**u**lp|**en**	tem|**ed**|**en**	cēp|**t**|**en**	luf|**od**|**en**
NON-FINITE	*INFIN*	help|**an**	temm|**an**	cēp|**an**	luf|**i(g)**-**an**
	INFL INF	help|**enne**	temm|**enne**	cēp|**enne**	luf|**i(g)**-**enne**
	PRES PTC	help|**ende**	temm|**ende**	cēp|**ende**	luf|**i(g)**-**ende**
	PAST PTC	**ge**|holp|**en**	**ge**|tem|**ed**	**ge**|cēp|**ed**	**ge**|luf|**od**
		help	*tame*	*keep*	*love*

Weak verbs

CLASS		INF	PAST (SG)	PAST PTC	MODE
I	(a)	temm|an	tem|**ed**|e	ge|tem|ed	*tame*
		styr|ian	styr|**ed**|e	ge|styr|ed	*stir*
	(b)	dēm|an	dēm|**d**|e	ge|dēm|ed	*deem*
	(c)	cēp|an	cēp|**t**|e	ge|cēp|**ed**, -|**t**	*keep*
	(d) *no IU in past stem*	sell|an	**seal**|d|e	ge|**seal**|d	*sell* 'give'
		tell|an	**teal**|d|e	ge|**teal**|d	*tell*
		tǣc|an ['tæːtʃan]	t**āh**|t|e	ge|t**āh**|t	*teach*
		sēc|an ['seːtʃan]	s**ōh**|t|e	ge|s**ōh**|t	*seek*
		bycg|an	b**ōh**|t|e	ge|b**ōh**|t	*buy*
		þenc|an ['θentʃan]	þ**ōh**|t|e	ge|þ**ōh**|t	*think*
		þync|an ['θyntʃan]	þ**ūh**|t|e	ge|þ**ūh**|t	'seem'
II		lōc|ian	lōc|**od**|e	ge|lōc|**od**	*look*

CLASS III

		HABBAN	LIBBAN	SECGAN
PRESENT	1 SG	**hæbb**|e	**libb**|e	secg|e
	2 SG	**hæf**|st	**leof**|ast	**sæg**|st
	3 SG	**hæf**|þ	**leof**|aþ	**sæg**|þ
	PL	habb|aþ	libb|aþ	secg|aþ
	SUBJ SG	**hæbb**|e	libb|e	secg|e
	SUBJ PL	**hæbb**|en	libb|en	secg|en
	IMP SG	h**af**|a	**leof**|a	**sag**|a
	IMP PL	habb|aþ	libb|aþ	secg|aþ
PAST	1 SG	**hæf**|d|e	**lif**|d|e	**sæg**|d|e, s**ǣ**|d|e
	2 SG	**hæf**|d|est	**lif**|d|est	**sæg**|d|est, s**ǣ**|d|est
	3 SG	**hæf**|d|e	**lif**|d|e	**sæg**|d|e, s**ǣ**|d|e
	PL	**hæf**|d|on	**lif**|d|on	**sæg**|d|on, s**ǣ**|d|on
	SUBJ SG	**hæf**|d|e	**lif**|d|e	**sæg**|d|e, s**ǣ**|d|e
	SUBJ PL	**hæf**|d|en	**lif**|d|en	**sæg**|d|en, s**ǣ**|d|en
NON-FINITE	INFIN	habb|an	libb|an	secg|an
	INFL INF	**hæbb**|enne	libb|enne	secg|enne
	PRES PTC	**hæbb**|ende	libb|ende	secg|ende
	PAST PTC	ge|**hæf**|d	ge|**lif**|d	ge|**sæg**|d, ge|s**ǣ**|d
		have	*live*	*say*

Strong verbs

CLASS	INFIN	PAST SG	PAST PL	PAST PTC	ModE
(1–3)	PIE **e**	PIE **o**	PIE **Ø**	PIE **Ø**	
1	**PIE e+i** > PG ei > OE **ī**	**PIE o+i** > PG ai > OE **ā**	**PIE Ø+i** > PG, OE **i**	**PIE Ø+i** > PG, OE **i**	
	OE wr**ī**t|an	wr**ā**t	wr**i**t|on	ge|wr**i**t|en	*write*
2	**PIE e+u** > PG eu > OE **ēo**	**PIE o+u** > PG au > OE **ēa**	**PIE Ø+u** > PG, OE **u**	**PIE Ø+u** > PG **u** > OE **o**	
	OE c**ēo**s|an	c**ēa**s	c**u**r|on	ge|c**o**r|en	*choose*
3 (a)	**PIE e+NC** PG e > OE **i**	**PIE o+NC** > PG, OE **a**	**PIE Ø +NC** > PG, OE **u**	**PIE Ø +NC** > PG, OE **u**	
	OE dr**i**nc|an cl**i**mb|an	dr**a**nc cl**a**mb	dr**u**nc|on cl**u**mb|on	ge|dr**u**nc|en ge|cl**u**mb|en	*drink* *climb*
(b)	**PIE e+lC** > PG, OE **e**	**PIE o+lC** > PG a > OE **ea**	**PIE Ø+lc** > PG, OE **u**	**PIE Ø+lC** > PG **u** > OE **o**	
	OE h**e**lp|an	h**ea**lp	h**u**lp|on	ge|h**o**lp|en	*help*
(c)	**PIE e+rC / e+x** > PG e > OE **eo**	**PIE o+rC / o+x** > > PG a > OE **ea**	**PIE Ø+rC / o+x** > PG, OE **u**	**PIE Ø+rC / o+x** > PG **u** > OE **o**	
	OE st**eo**rf|an OE f**eo**ht|an	st**ea**rf f**ea**ht	st**u**rf|on f**u**ht|on	ge|st**o**rf|en ge|f**o**ht|en	*starve* 'die' *fight*
4	**PIE e+l/r/n** > PG, OE **e**	**PIE o+l/r/n** > PG a > OE **æ**	**PIE ē+l/r/n** > PG **ē** > OE **ǣ**	**PIE Ø+l/r/n** > PG **u** > OE **o**	
	OE st**e**l|an	st**æ**l	st**ǣ**l|on	ge|st**o**l|en	*steal*
5	**PIE e+C** > PG, OE **e/i**	**PIE o+C** > PG a > OE **æ**	**PIE ē+C** > PG **ē** > OE **ǣ**	**PIE e+C** > PG, OE **e**	
	OE spr**e**c|an	spr**æ**c	spr**ǣ**c|on	ge|spr**e**c|en	*speak*
	OE s**i**tt|an (< **-jan*)	s**æ**t	s**ǣ**t|on	ge|s**e**t|en	*sit*
	OE l**i**cg|an (")	l**æ**g	l**ǣ**g|on	ge|l**e**g|en	*lie (down)*
	OE s**ē**on (*contracted*)	s**ea**h	s**ā**w|on	ge|s**e**w|en	*see*
6	**PIE o** > PG, OE **a**	**PIE ō** > PG, OE **ō**	= PAST SG	= INFIN	
	OE dr**a**g|an	dr**ō**g	dr**ō**g|on	ge|dr**a**g|en	*draw*
7	*(varies)*	OE **ĕ** / **ĕo**	= PAST SG	= INFIN	
	OE h**ā**t|an	h**e**ht > h**ē**t	h**ē**t|on	ge|h**ā**t|en	'call'
	OE sl**ǣ**p|an	sl**ē**p	sl**ē**p|on	ge|sl**ǣ**p|en	*sleep*
	OE r**ǣ**d|an	r**eo**rd	r**eo**rd|on	ge|r**ǣ**d|en	*read*
	OE cn**ā**w|an	cn**ēo**w	cn**ēo**w|on	ge|cn**ā**w|en	*know*
	OE f**ea**ll|an	f**ēo**ll	f**ēo**ll|on	ge|f**ea**ll|en	*fall*

Preterite-present verbs

		ĀGAN	CUNNAN	*DURRAN	MAGAN
PRESENT	1, 3 SG	āh	can(n)	dear(r)	mæg
	2 SG	āhst	canst	dear(r)st	meaht, miht
	PL	āgon	cunnon	durron	magon
	SUBJ SG	āge	cunne	durre, dyrre	mæge
	SUBJ PL	āgen	cunnen	durren, dyrren	mægen
	IMP SG	āht	cunne	durre	—
	IMP PL	āhtaþ	cunnaþ	durraþ	—
PAST	1, 3 SG	āhte	cūþe	dorste, dyrste	meahte, mihte
	PL	āhton	cūþon	dorston, dyrston	meahton, mihton
	SUBJ SG	āhte	cūþe	dorste, dyrste	meahte, mihte
	SUBJ PL	āhten	cūþen	dorsten, dyrsten	meahten, mihten
	PAST PTC	(ge)āgen	(ge)cunnen (ge)cūþ (*adj*)	—	—
		'have' > ModE *ought, owe*	*can*	*dare*	'be able to' > ModE *may*

		MŌTAN	SCULAN	UNNAN	WITAN
PRESENT	1, 3 SG	mōt	sceal	ann	wāt
	2 SG	mōst	scealt	an(n)st	wāst
	PL	mōton	sculon	unnon	witon
	SUBJ SG	mōte	scyle	unne	wite
	SUBJ PL	mōten	scylen	unnen	witen
	IMP SG	mōte	scyle	—	wite
	IMP PL	mōtaþ	scylaþ	—	witaþ
PAST	1, 3 SG	mōste	sc(e)olde	ūþe	wiste, wisse
	PL	mōston	sc(e)oldon	ūþon	wiston
	SUBJ SG	mōste	sc(e)olde	ūþe	wisse
	SUBJ PL	mōsten	sc(e)olden	ūþen	wissen
	PAST PTC	—	—	—	(ge)witen (ge)wiss (*adj*)
		'be allowed' > ModE *must*	'be obliged' > ModE *shall*	'grant'	'know'

Irregular (anomalous) verbs

		BĒON / WESAN	DŌN	GĀN	WILLAN
PRESENT	1 SG	eom, bēo	dō	gā	wille
	2 SG	eart, bist	dēst	gǣst	wilt
	3 SG	is, biþ	dēþ	gǣþ	wille
	PL	sind(on), aron, bēoþ	dōþ	gāþ	willaþ
	SUBJ SG	sīe/sy, bēo	dō	gā	wille
	SUBJ PL	sīen/syn, bēon	dōn	gān	willen
	IMP SG	wes, bēo	dō	gā	—
	IMP PL	wesaþ, bēoþ	dōþ	gāþ	—
PAST	1 SG	wæs	dyde	ēode	wolde
	2 SG	wære	dydest	ēodest	woldest
	3 SG	wæs	dyde	ēode	wolde
	PL	wæron	dydon	ēodon	woldon
	SUBJ SG	wære	dyde	ēode	wolde
	SUBJ PL	wæren	dyden	ēoden	wolden
NON-FINITE	INFIN	bēon, wesan	dōn	gān	willan
	INFL INF	bēonne, wesenne	dōnne	gānne	willenne
	PRES PTC	bēonde, wesende	dōnde	gangende	willende
	PAST PTC	(ge)bēon	(ge)dōn	(ge)gān, (ge)gangen	—
		be	*do*	*go*	*will* 'wish'

Contracted negative forms

nabban	= ne habban	nelle/nylle	= ne wille
næbbe	= ne hæbbe	nelaþ	= ne willaþ
næfde	= ne hæfde	nolde	= ne wolde
næs	= ne wæs	nāt	= ne wāt
nǣron	= ne wǣron	nyste	= ne wiste
nis/nys	= ne is/ys	nyton	= ne witon

Old English numerals

	CARDINAL		ORDINAL
1	MASC **ān**	FEM, NEUT **āne**	fyr(e)st, fyrmest, forma, ǣrest
2	MASC **twēgen**	FEM, NEUT **twā**	ōþer
3	MASC **þrīe**	FEM, NEUT **þrēo**	þridda
4	**fēower**		fēorþa
5	**fīf**		fīfta
6	**siex/syx/six/sex**		siexta (etc.)
7	**siofon/seofon, -an**		seofoþa
8	**eahta**		eahtoþa
9	**nigon**		nigoþa
10	**tīen/tȳn/tīn/tēon**		tēoþa
11	**en(d)lefan, -leofan**		en(d)lefta, -lyfta
12	**twelf**		twelfta
13	**þrēo|tīene**		þrēo|tēoþa
. . .	. . .		. . .
20	**twēn|tig**		-tigoþa, -tegoþa, -teogoþa
25	**fīf and twēntig**		fīf and twēntigoþa
30	**þrī|tig**		-tigoþa, -tegoþa, -teogoþa
40	**fēower|tig**		"
50	**fīf|tig**		"
60	**siex|tig**		"
70	**hund|seofon|tig**		"
80	**hund|eahta|tig**		"
90	**hund|nigon|tig**		"
100	**hund/hundred/hund|tēon|tig**		hundtēon|tigoþa, -tegoþa, -teogoþa
1000	**þūsend**		—

Ordinals are declined as weak adjectives, except for *ōþer*, which is always strong.

The cardinal *ān* is declined as a strong adjective; *twēgen* and *þrīe* are declined as shown below.

Bēgen 'both' is declined like *twēgen*.

	MASC	NEUT	FEM
N A	twēgen	twā, tū	twā
G		twēg(r)a	
D		twǣm, twām	

two

	MASC	NEUT	FEM
N A	þrīe		þrēo
G		þrēora	
D		þrim	

three

Old English prepositions

andlang 'along'	+ GEN		**of** 'of, from'	+ DAT
æfter 'after'	+ DAT		**ofer** 'over'	+ ACC/DAT
agenes 'against'	+ DAT		**on** 'on/onto; in/into'	+ ACC/DAT
ǣr 'before'	+ DAT		**ongēan** 'against'	+ ACC
æt 'at'	+ DAT		**ongemang** 'amidst'	+ DAT
bē/bī 'about, by'	+ DAT		**oþ** 'until'	+ ACC
beforan 'before'	+ DAT		**tō** 'to, toward'	+ DAT
betwēonan 'between'	+ DAT		**tōforan** 'before'	+ DAT
būtan 'without'	+ DAT		**togeanes** 'opposite'	+ DAT
for 'for'	+ DAT		**þurh** 'through'	+ ACC
fore 'before'	+ ACC		**under** 'under'	+ DAT
fram/from 'from, by'	+ DAT		**up** 'up'	+ DAT
gemang 'among'	+ DAT		**uppan** 'upon'	+ DAT
geond 'throughout'	+ ACC		**ūt** 'outside'	+ ACC/DAT
in 'in, into'	+ ACC/DAT		**wiþ** 'against'	+ ACC/DAT
innan 'within'	+ DAT		**wiþuten** 'outside'	+ DAT
mid 'with'	+ DAT		**ymbe/embe** 'about'	+ ACC
neah 'near'	+ DAT			

Old English word formation

Affixation

Substantival suffixes

	GENDER	MEANING	EXAMPLES
-dōm	MASC	'state'	*eorldōm* 'earldom', *wīsdōm* 'wisdom'
-end	MASC	pres ptc	*frēond* 'friend', *scyppend* 'creator'

-ere	MASC	agentive	*fiscere* 'fisherman', *bæcere* 'baker'
-hād	MASC	'state, rank'	*cildhād* 'child*hood*', *weoruldhād* 'secular state'
-ing, **-ling**	MASC	patronymic; 'endearment'	*cyning* 'king', *nȳdling* 'a person in need', *dēorling* 'dar*ling*'
-nis(s)/-y-/-e-	FEM	abstract	*elþēodnyss* 'foreign*ness*'
-(o)þ/-(a)þ	FEM	activity	*fiscoþ* 'fishing', *gesyhþ* 'sight, vision'
-scipe	MASC	abstract	*gebēorscipe* 'feast', *frēondscipe* 'friend*ship*'
-þ(u)/-þ(o)	FEM	abstract	*lengþ* (with IU) 'leng*th*', *myrigþ* 'joy' (> myr*th*)
-ung/-ing	FEM	verbal noun	*gristbitung* 'gnashing of teeth', *swinsung* 'melody' (< *swinsian* 'make a pleasing sound')

Adjectival suffixes

-ig	*mihtig* 'mighty', *dyrstig* 'daring'
-isc	*englisc* 'Engl*ish*'
-sum	*hīersum* 'obedient', *wynsum* 'wins*ome*'
-feald	*manigfeald* 'mani*fold*'
-full	*geornfull* 'eager', *egefull* 'aw*ful*'
-lēas	*reccelēas* 'reck*less*'
-līc	*flæsclic* 'flesh*ly*', *sārlic* 'sad, sorry'

Adverbial suffixes

-e	*feste* 'firmly', *hraþe/hræþe* 'quickly'
-līce	*ēcelice* 'eternal*ly*', *gearelice* 'readi*ly*'

Verbal prefixes

	MEANING	EXAMPLES
ā-	'out of'	*ārīsan* 'arise'
be-	'round, about'	*besettan* 'besiege', *beþencan* 'think over'
for-	'destruction'	*fordōn* 'destroy', *forbærnan* 'burn up'
fore-	'before'	*foregangan* 'precede'
forþ-	'forth'	*forþfaran* 'go forth, die'
ge-	'result, completion'	*gewinnan* 'win', *geaxian* 'ask'
geond-	'through'	*geondstyrian* 'to agitate'
mis-	opposite	*mislician* 'dislike'

of-	intensifying	*ofslēan* 'kill'
ofer-	'over'	*ofergietan* 'to neglect'
on-	'change'	*oncieran* 'convert', *oncnāwan* 'get to know'
tō-	'divide'	*tōbrecan* 'break off', *tōweorpan* 'throw away'
þurh-	'through'	*þurhsmēagan* 'to search through'
un-	opposite	*geunclǣnsian* 'pollute'
under-	'under'	*undergietan* 'understand'
wiþ-	'against'	*wiþcweðan* 'contradict'
ymb-	'about'	*ymbsittan* 'besiege'

Substantival prefixes

	MEANING	EXAMPLES
ge-	collective; perfectivity	*gebrōþor* 'two or more brothers', *gefera* 'companion'; *gewinn* 'battle', *gebroc* 'fragment'
un-	opposite	*ungelimp* 'misfortune'
		Also **adjectival** and **adverbial**: *unnytt* 'useless', *unweorþ* 'unworthy', *ungecundelice* 'unnaturally'

Deadjectival verbs

ADJECTIVE	INTRANSITIVE VERB 'to be/become ~'	TRANSITIVE (CAUSATIVE) VERB 'to make ~'
full 'full'	*fulian* [WV II]	*fyllan* [WV I]
wearm 'warm'	*wearmian* [WV II]	*wireman* [WV I]
hīersum 'obedient'	*hīersumian* [WV II] (a) 'obey', (b) 'subjugate'	
blōdig 'bloody'	*blōdigian* [WV II] (a) 'become bloody', (b) 'make bloody'	

Compounding

Compound nouns

N + N	*blōdgyte* 'bloodshed', *dægrǣd* 'dawn', *gādīsen* 'goading iron'
ADJ + N	*middangeard* 'middle earth' (lit. 'yard')

Compound adjectives

N + ADJ	*weoroldrīce* 'having worldly power/wealth'
ADJ + ADJ	*wīdbrād* 'widespread, ample'
ADJ + N	*eaþmōd* 'humble', *rūmmōd* 'of liberal mind'

Old English grammar analysis

(1) For each word, identify the **part of speech**: VERB, NOUN, ADJECTIVE, PRONOUN, DE-
TERMINER, NUMERAL, ADVERB, PREPOSITION, CONJUNCTION, INTERJECTION.

(2) Identify **invariant properties**:

    (a) **verbs**

        (i) type: STRONG, WEAK, PRETERITE–PRESENT, ANOMALOUS

        (ii) class: SV 1–7, WV I–III

    (b) **nouns**

        (i) stem: A- (JA-, WA-), Ō- (JŌ-, WŌ-), N-, I-, U-, S-, R-, ROOT

        (ii) gender: MASCULINE, NEUTER, FEMININE

    (c) **pronouns** and **determiners**

        (i) subclass: PERSONAL, DEMONSTRATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, INDEFINITE

        (ii) person: 1ST, 2ND, 3RD (personal pronouns only)

(3) Identify **inflectional properties** and explain why the word is in that form:

    (a) **finite verbs**

        (i) mood: INDICATIVE, SUBJUNCTIVE, IMPERATIVE

        (ii) tense: PRESENT, PAST

        (iii) person & 1ST, 2ND, 3RD
             number: SINGULAR, PLURAL
             Why? (Agreement: identify Subject.)

    (b) all **NP constituents** (nouns, adjectives, pronouns and determiners, nu-
merals, non-finite verbs)

        (i) case: NOMINATIVE, ACCUSATIVE, GENITIVE, DATIVE, INSTRUMENTAL
             Why? (Identify syntactic function or agreement controller.)

        (ii) number: SINGULAR, PLURAL
             (For dependents in NPs, specify agreement controller.)

    (c) **adjectives**

        (i) declension: WEAK, STRONG
             Why? (Definite/indefinite NP.)

        (ii) gender: MASCULINE, NEUTER, FEMININE
             Why? (Agreement with...)

    (d) **determiners**

        (i) gender: MASCULINE, NEUTER, FEMININE
             Why? (Agreement with...)

    (e) **non-finite verbs**

        (i) type: INFINITIVE, PRESENT PARTICIPLE, PAST PARTICIPLE

        (ii) gender: MASCULINE, NEUTER, FEMININE (some participles only)
             Why? (Agreement with...)

Sample analysis

OE text (from the *Blickling Homily*)

Men þa leofostan, hwæt, nu anra manna gehwylcne ic myngie and lære, ge weras ge wif, ge geonge ge ealde, ge snottre ge unwise, ge þa welegan ge þa þearfan, þæt anra gehwylc hine sylfne sceawige and ongyte, and swa hwæt swa he on mycclum gyltum oððe on medmycclum gefremede, þæt he þonne hrædlice gecyrre to þam selran and to þon soðan læcedome.

MODE translation

Dearest men, behold! I now remind and advise every man, both men and women, both young and old, both wise and unwise, both rich and poor, that everyone behold and understand himself and, whatever he has committed in great sins or in lesser ones, that he now quickly turn to the better and the true remedy.

Analysis

men NOM PL of *man* [MASC N, ROOT]: vocative function

lēofostan WEAK NOM PL of *lēof-ost*: agreement with *men*; **lēofost** SUPERL of *lēof* [ADJ]

þā NOM PL of *sē* [DEM DET] – agreement with *men*

hwæt [INTERJ]

nū [ADV]

gehwylcne MASC ACC (SG) of *gehwylc* [INDEF PRON] – O$_D$ of *myngie* & *lære*

manna GEN PL of *man* [MASC N, ROOT]: nominal (partitive) modifier of *gehwylcne*

ānra STRONG GEN PL of *ān* [NUM] ('all'): agreement with *manna*

ic [PERS PRON, 1ST PERS] NOM SG: Subject

myngie PRES INDIC 1ST SG of *myn(e)gian* [WV II]: agreement with Subject *ic*

lǣre PRES INDIC 1ST SG of *lǣran* [WV I]: agreement with Subject *ic*

ge... ge... [CONJ] ('both... and...')

weras ACC PL of *wer* [MASC N, A-STEM]: appositive to ACC *gehwylcne*

wīf ACC PL of *wīf* [NEUT N, A-STEM]: appositive to ACC *gehwylcne*

geonge STRONG MASC ACC PL of *geong* [ADJ]: appositive to ACC *gehwylcne*

ealde STRONG MASC ACC PL of *eald* [ADJ]: appositive to ACC *gehwylcne*

snottre STRONG MASC ACC PL of *snotor/snoter* [ADJ]: appositive to ACC *gehwylcne*

unwīse STRONG MASC ACC PL of *unwīs* [ADJ]: appositive to ACC *gehwylcne*

welegan WEAK ACC PL of *weleg* [ADJ]: appositive to ACC *gehwylcne*; WEAK because definite (*þā...*)

þā ACC PL of *sē* [DEM DET]: agreement with *welegan*

þearfan WEAK ACC PL of *þearfa* [ADJ]: appositive to ACC *gehwylcne*; WEAK because definite (*þā...*)

þā ACC PL of *sē* [DEM DET]: agreement with *þearfan*

þæt [CONJ]

gehwylc [INDEF PRON] MASC NOM (SG): Subject

ānra STRONG GEN PL of *ān* [NUM] ('all'): nominal (partitive) modifier of *gehwylc*

hine ACC SG of *hē* [PERS PRON, 3RD PERS, MASC]: O$_D$ of *scēawige*

sylfne ACC SG of *sylf/self* [(emphatic) reflexive marker of *hine*]: agreement with *hine*

scēawige PRES SUBJ 3RD SG of *scēawian* [WV II]: agreement with Subject *gehwylc*

ongyte PRES SUBJ 3RD SG of *ongytan* [SV 5]: agreement with Subject *gehwylc*

swā hwæt swā [INDEF PRON] ACC: O$_D$ of *fremede*

hē [PERS PRON, 3RD PERS, MASC] NOM SG: Subject

on [PREP] + DAT

gyltum DAT PL of *gylt* [MASC N *I*-STEM]: Complement of PREP *on*

mycclum STRONG MASC DAT PL of *mycel/micel* [ADJ]: agreement with *gyltum*

oþþe [CONJ]

medmycclum STRONG MASC DAT PL of *med-mycel* [adj]: Complement of PREP *on*

gefremede PAST INDIC 3RD SG of *(ge)fremman* [WV I]: agreement with Subject *he*

hē [PERS PRON, 3RD PERS, MASC] NOM SG: Subject

þonne [ADV]

hrædlīce [ADV] (from *hrædlīc* [ADJ])

gecyrre PRES SUBJ 3RD SG of *(ge)cyrran/cierran* [WV I]: agreement with Subject *he*

tō [PREP] + DAT

þām sēlran NP will an elliptical head, DAT SG: Complement of prep *tō*

  þām DAT SG of *sē* [DEM DET]

  sēlran WEAK DAT SG of *sēlra*; **sēlra** COMPAR of **gōd** [ADJ]

tō [PREP] + INSTR

þon sōðan lǣcedōme NP, INSTR SG: Complement of prep *tō*
(Note that while the first occurrence of *tō* governs its Complement in the dative, this second *tō* takes the instrumental; this is only seen in the form of the determiner: *þām* vs *þon*.)

  þon: MASC INSTR SG of *sē* [DEM DET]

  sōðan: WEAK INSTR(=DAT) SG of *sōþ* [ADJ]

  lǣcedōme INSTR(=DAT) SG of *lǣcedōm* [MASC N, *A*-STEM]

Middle English letter–sound correspondences

Vowel graphemes

Single letters

LETTERS	PHONETIC SYMBOLS AND CONTEXT		EXAMPLES
<a>	[ɑ]		ME *fallen* [ˈfalən] 'fall'
	[ɑ:]		ME *nāme* [ˈnɑːmə] 'name'
<e>	[e]		ME *setten* [ˈsetən] 'sed'
	[e:]	(*often <é> in training materials*)	ME *méten* [ˈmeːtən] 'meet'
	[ɛ:]	(*often <è> in training materials*)	ME *mète* [ˈmɛːtə] 'food' > *meat*
	[ə]	in unstressed syllables	*(in all examples above)*
<i, y>	[i]		ME *mist* 'mist', *synn* [sin] 'sin'
	[i:]		ME *rīden* 'to ride', *fȳr* [fiːr] 'fire'
<y>	[j]	before a vowel (in the same syllable)	ME *yéven* [ˈjeːvən] 'give' (but ME *ȳen* [ˈiːən] 'eyes')
<o>	[o]		ME *god* [god] 'god'
	[o:]	(*often <ó> in training materials*)	ME *gód* [goːd] 'good'
	[ɔ:]	(*often <ò> in training materials*)	ME *hòm* [hɔːm] 'home'
	[u]	next to <i, m, n, u, v, w>	ME *comen* [ˈkumən] 'come'
<u, v>	[u]		ME *full* [ful], *vnder* [ˈundər]
	[y(ː)]	(in the West, until L 14th c.)	W *busy* [ˈbyzi] 'busy'

Digraphs

LETTERS	PHONETIC SYMBOLS	EXAMPLES
<ai, ay>	[ɑi]	ME *dai* [dɑi] 'day'
<au, aw>	[ɑu]	ME *drauen* [ˈdrɑuən] 'draw'
<ei, ey>	[ei]	ME *thei* [ðei] 'they'
<eu, ew, u(e)>	[eu]	ME *feue* [ˈfeuə] 'few'
<iu, iw, u(e)>	[iu]	ME *niuwe* [ˈniuə] 'new'
<oi, oy>	[oi]	ME *chois* [tʃois] 'choice'
<ou, ow>	[ou]	ME *slou* [slou] 'lazy, slow'
	[u:]	ME *mous* [muːs] 'mouse' (NB ME *poure* [ˈpovrə] 'poor')
<ui, uy>	[y(ː)] (in the West, until L 14th c.)	ME *buyen* [ˈbyːən] 'buy'

Late Middle English spelling innovations (15th c.)

<ee> = [e:]   ME<oo> = [o:]

<ea> = [ɛ:]   ME<oa> = [ɔ:]

Final silent <-e>: marker of length (of the preceding V), e.g. ME *life* [**li**ːf]

The History of English in Texts and Tables

Consonant graphemes

LETTER/DIGRAPH	PHONETIC SYMBOL AND CONTEXT		EXAMPLES
<c>	[s]	before front vowels	ME *celer* [ˈselər] 'stroreroom'
	[k]	in all other cases	ME *crīen* [ˈkriːən] 'cry'
<ch>	[tʃ]		ME *chésen* [ˈtʃeːzən] 'choose'
<g>	[dʒ]	before front vowels	ME *gendre* [ˈdʒendrə] 'class, kind'
	[g]	in all other cases	ME *gòn* [goːn] 'go'
<ȝ ȝ>	[j]	before vowels (later > <y>)	ME *ȝellen* [ˈjelən] 'yell'
	[w]	(occasionally; later > <w>)	ME *sorȝe* [ˈsorwə] 'sorrow'
	[ç]	after front vowels (> <gh>)	ME *kniȝt* [kniçt] 'knight, boy'
	[x]	in all most cases (> <gh>)	ME *thouȝt* [θouxt] 'thought'
<gh>	[ç]	after front vowels	ME *knight* [kniçt] 'knight, boy'
	[x]	in all other cases	ME *thought* [θouxt] 'thought'
<sh>	[ʃ]		ME *shīnen* [ˈʃiːnən] 'shine'
<th, þ>	[θ]		ME *thinken* [ˈθiŋkən] 'seem' > *think*
	[ð]		ME *that* [ðat] 'that'
<u, v>	[v]		ME *poure* [ˈpovrə] 'poor'
<wh>	[hw]		ME *what* [hwat] 'what'

New letters in ME: <j, k, q, v>

Double consonant letters no longer mark length: in ME orthography they indicate that the preceding vowel is short.

Middle English sound changes

OE monophthongs in ME

SHORT	LONG
OE [i] > ME [i]	OE [iː] > ME [iː]
OE [y] > ME [i] > ME [y] <u> (West; > LME [u]) > ME [e] (Kent)	OE [yː] > ME [iː] > ME [yː] (West) > ME [eː] (Kent)
OE [e] > ME [e]	OE [eː] > ME [eː]
OE [æ] > ME [a]	OE [æː] > ME [ɛː]
OE [u] > ME [u]	OE [uː] > ME [uː]
OE [o] > ME [o]	OE [oː] > ME [oː]
OE [ɑ] > ME [a]	OE [ɑː] > ME [ɔː]

Monophthongisation of OE diphthongs

OE [ie] > ME [i]	ME *fight* 'fight (PRES 1,3SG)' < OE *fieht*
OE [eo] > EME [ø] > ME [e]	ME *herte* 'heart' < OE *heorte*
OE [eɑ] > EME [æ] > ME [ɑ]	EME *ale* < OE *ealu* (ME *āle*)
OE [iːe] > ME [iː]	EME *trīwe* 'true' < OE *trīewe* (ME *treue/triue*)
OE [eːo] > EME [øː] > [eː]	ME *dép* 'deep' < OE *dēop*
OE [eːɑ] > EME [æː] > ME [ɛː]	ME *hèp* 'heap' < OE *hēap*

New diphthongs in ME

(a) Vocalisation of OE [ʝ] *and* [ɣ]

OE [ʝ] > ME [j]	OE [ɣ] > ME [w]

The EME [j] and [w] then formed new, monophonemic diphthongs with the preceding vowel.

ME [-i] diphthongs

ME [ai] <	EME [a+j]	< OE [æʝ]	ME *dai/day* 'day' < OE *dæg*
ME [ei] <	EME [e+j]	< OE [eʝ]	ME *wei/wey* 'way' < OE *weg*
	EME [ɛː+j]	< OE [æːʝ]	ME *grei/grey* 'grey' < OE *grǣg*
	EME [eː+j]	< OE [eːʝ]	ME *hei/hey* 'hay' < Angl. *hēg*
ME [oi] <	OFr [oi] (in loans)		ME *chois* 'choice', *joye* 'joy'

ME [-u] diphthongs

ME [au] <	OE [aɣ]		ME *drawen* 'draw' < OE *dragan*
	OE [aw]		ME *clau(e)* 'claw' < OE *clawu*
ME [ou] <	EME [o+w]	< OE [oɣ]	ME *bowe* 'bow' < OE *boga*
	EME [ɔː+w]	< OE [ɑːw]	ME *knowen* 'know' < OE *cnāwan*
	EME [ɔː+w]	< OE [ɑːɣ]	ME *owen* 'owe' < OE *āgan*
	EME [oː+w]	< OE [oːw]	ME *blowen* 'blow' < OE *blōwan*
	EME [oː+w]	< OE [oːɣ]	ME *enowe* 'enough' < OE *genōg*
ME [eu, iu] <	EME [ɛː+w]	< OE [eːɑw]	ME *feu(e) / fiu(e)* 'few' < OE *fēawe*
	EME [eː+w]	< OE [eːow]	ME *breuen / briuen* 'brew' < OE *brēowan*
	EME [iː+w]	< OE [iːw]	ME *neu(e) / niu(e)* 'new' < OE *nīwe*

(b) *Glide insertion before OE* [ç] *and* [x]

OE [e(:)ç] > ME [eiç]	LOE *ehta* ['eçtɑ] 'eight' > EME ['ejçtə] > ME *eighte* ['eiçtə]
OE [ɑ(:)x] > ME [ɑux]	OE *tāhte* ['tɑ:xte] 'taught' > ME *taughte* ['tɑuxtə]
OE [o(:)x] > ME [oux]	OE *bōhte* ['bo:xte] 'bought' > ME *boughte* ['bouxtə]

Quantitative changes in stressed syllables

Open-syllable lengthening

OE V̆ > ME V̄ / ___ CV

OE [ɑ] > ME [ɑː]   ME *nāme* 'name' < OE *nama*

OE [e] > ME [ɛː]   ME *mète* 'food' < OE *mete*

OE [o] > ME [ɔː]   ME *nòse* 'nose' < OE *nosu*

Pre-cluster shortening

OE V̄ > ME V̆ / ___ CC*   * except [st, ld, nd, mb]

Examples ME *kepte* 'kept' < OE *cēpte* (cf. ME *képen* INFIN < OE *cēpan*), ME *mette* ['metə] 'met' < EME ['mettə] < OE *mētte* ['me:tte] (cf. ME *méten* INFIN < OE *mētan*).

LME trisyllabic shortening (trisyllabic laxing)

ME V̄ > LME V̆ / ___ *2 (or more) sylls.*

Examples ME *divīnite* [di'vi:nite:] > LME [di'vinite:], ME *brévite* ['bre:vite:] > LME ['brevite:], ME *sānite* ['sɑ:nite:] > LME ['sɑnite:], ME *sòlitude* ['sɔ:litiud] > LME ['səlitiud], ME *profoundite* [prɔ(:)'fu:ndite:] > [prɔ(:)'fundite:]. Cf. unshortened *divine, brief, sane, sole, profound*.

Weakening (lenition) processes

Unstressed vowel reduction and loss

OE V^UNSTRESSED > ME [ə] > (sometimes > LME Ø)

Examples OE *stānas* ['stɑ:nɑs] 'stones' > ME *stònes* ['stɔ:nəz] > LME [stɔ:nz]; OE *lufian* ['luviɑn] 'love' > ME *loven* ['luvən] > *love* ['luvə] > LME [luv].

In ME orthography, [ə] is usually rendered as <e>.

Vowel shortening in weakly stressed words/syllables

Examples OE *būfan* 'above' > ME *above(n)* [ə'buv(ə(n))], OE *būtan* 'but' > ME *but(en)*, OE *ūs* 'us' > ME *us*.

Voicing of fricatives in inflectional endings and function words

OE [-s] > ME [-z], e.g. OE -*as* [-ɑs] NOM/ACC PL (MAC A-STEMS) > ME -*es* [-əz], OE -*es* [-es] GEN SG (MAC A-STEMS) > ME -*es* [-əz], OE *his* [his], *is* [is] > ME [hiz, iz].

OE [θ-] > ME [ð-], e.g. OE *þæt* [θæt] > ME *that* [ðɑt, ðət], OE *þis* [θis] > ME *this* [ðis].

Degemination

Examples ME *sitten* [ˈsitən] 'sit' < OE *sittan* [ˈsittɑn], ME *all* [ɑl] < OE eall [eɑll].

The Middle English phonological system

Vowel phonemes

SHORT VOWELS

i		u
e	ə	o
	ɑ	

LONG MONOPHTHONGS

iː	uː
eː	oː
ɛː	ɔː
	ɑː

[-i] DIPHTHONGS

ei	oi
	ɑi

[-u] DIPHTHONGS

(iu)	
eu	ou
	ɑu

[iu] is in free variation with [eu]. [ə] occurs in unstressed syllables only.

Consonant phonemes

	LABIAL		CORONAL			DORSAL		
	BILABIAL	LABIO-DENTAL	DENTAL	ALVEOLAR	PALATO-ALVEOLAR	PALATAL	VELAR	GLOTTAL
PLOSIVES	p b			t d			k g	
AFFRICATES					tʃ dʒ			
FRICATIVES		f v	θ ð	s z	ʃ —	(ç)/x/	x —	(h)/x/
NASALS	m			n			(ŋ)/n/	
APPROXIMANTS	w			r		j	w	
LATERAL APPROX.				l				

Middle English transcription

Subphonemic detail, such as the allophones listed in the table above, should be included in ME transcription. The transcription should therefore be enclosed in square brackets, [ ] (not slants, / /).

Vowel length is marked neither in the ME texts nor in the ME glossary. The length of ME vowels, as well as the exact height of ME long mid vowels, is to be inferred from (a) ModE spelling conventions and pronunciation, and (b) the OE source of the sound. (See comment (2) below).

OE double (long) consonants were degeminated (shortened) in ME. Double consonant letters in ME orthography indicate that the preceding vowel is short.

Sample transcription

ME *And[1] ȝif ony[2] cursed wycche or enchauntour wolde bewycche*

[ənd jif ˈɔːni ˈkursəd ˈwitʃə or enˈtʃauntuːr woːldə beːˈwitʃə]

him þat[3,4] bereth the dyamand[5], all þat sorwe and myschance schall

[him ðət ˈbɛːrəθ ðə ˈdiːəmənd al ðat ˈsorwə ənd misˈtʃansə ʃal]

turne to himself,   þorgh vertue[6] of þat ston.   And also no wylde best

[ˈturnə toː himˈself θorx ˈvertiu əv ðat stɔːn ‖ ənd ˈalsɔː nɔː ˈwiːldə bɛːst]

dar assaylle the man þat bereth it on him.   Also the dyamand

[dar əˈsailə ðə man ðət ˈbɛːrəθ it on him ‖ ˈalsɔː ðə ˈdiːəmənd]

scholde ben ȝouen frely,   withouten coueytynge, and withouten

[ˈʃoːldə beːn ˈjovən ˈfreːli wiˈðuːtən ˈkuveitiŋgə ənd wiˈðuːtən]

byggynge[7]; and þan it is of grettere[8] vertue.   And it maketh[9] a man

[ˈbidʒiŋgə ənd ðan it iz əv ˈgretərə ˈvertiu ‖ ənd it ˈmaːkəθ ə man]

more strong and more sad aȝenst his enemyes.   And it heleth him

[ˈmɔːrə stroŋg ənd ˈmɔːrə sad əˈjenst hiz ˈenemiəz ‖ ənd it ˈhɛːləθ him]

þat is lunatyk[6],   and hem þat the fend pursueth or trauayleth.

[ðət iz ˈliunətik ənd hem ðət ðə feːnd purˈsiuəθ or traˈvailəθ (trəˈvailəθ)]

<div align="right">(from The Voiage and Travaile of Sir Iohn Maundevile)</div>

Comments

(1) **ME reduction** of unstressed vowels: [ə] is often, though not always, represented as <e> in ME orthography, e.g. ME *and* [ənd].

(2) **ME òny / èny** 'any' < OE *ānig / ǽnig*.
ME close ó [oː] may be the reflex of: (a) OE [oː]: ME *món(e)* < OE *mōna*; (b) OE [o] + HC: ME *wólde* < OE *wolde* (PAST 1,3SG of *willan*). ME close [oː] developed into ModE /uː/ in the GVS; its usual orthographic representation in ModE is <oo>.
ME close é [eː] may be the reflex of: (a) OE [eː]: ME *démen* 'deem' < OE *dēman*; (b) OE [eːo]: ME *sén* 'see' < OE *sēon*; (c) OE [e] + HC: ME *féld* 'field' < OE *feld*. After the GVS, ME close [eː] survives as ModE /iː/; in ModE orthography it is normally represented as either <ee> or <e> in an open syllable.
ME open ò [ɔː] may be the reflex of: (a) OE [ɑː]: ME *òk* 'oak' < OE *āc*; (b) OE [o] in a stressed open syllable: ME *òver* < OE *ofer*. In the GVS ME open [ɔː] diphthongised into ModE /əʊ/ and is now usually represented as <o> in an open syllable or <oa>. (But cf. ModE go /gəʊ/ < ME *gòn* alongside ModE do /duː/ < ME *dón*.)
ME open è [ɛː] may be the reflex of: (a) OE [æː]: ME *sè* 'sea' < OE *sǽ*; (b) OE [eːɑ]: ME *èst* 'east' < OE *ēast*; (c) OE [e] in a stressed open syllable: ME *èten* 'eat' < OE *etan*. In the final stages of the GVS ME open [ɛː] and close [eː] merged in ModE /iː/. In EModE orthography, however, the reflex ME open [ɛː] started to be represented by the digraph <ea>, which we still have today.

(3) **ME voicing of fricatives** in function words and inflectional endings: ME *that / þa* [ðat, ðət] *the / þe* [ðə], *of* [əv], *is* [iz], *daʒes* [ˈdaiəz].

(4) **ME that / þat** [ðat, ðət] usually occurs in its weak form [ðət] when it is a subordinating conjunction or a relativiser, but it is never reduced when it's a demonstrative (pronoun or determiner), just as in ModE.

(5) **ME [iː]** < OE [iː], OE [yː] or OE [i] + HC; >_GVS ModE /aɪ/.

(6) **ME [iu/eu]**, replacing Fr [y] in loanwords, developed into ModE /ju(ː)/.

(7) **ME biggen** [ˈbidʒən] < OE *bycgan* [ˈbydʒan]. ModE *buy* /baɪ/ is from the non-affricated forms: OE 2 and 3SG PRES INDIC *bygst* [byȷ̊st], *bygþ* [byȷ̊θ] > EME [bijst, bijθ] > ME [biːst, biːθ].

(8) **ME grèt** 'great' < OE *grēat*, but with Trisyllabic Shortening in the comparative: ME *grettere*. (The long /ɛː/ was later restored by analogical levelling: ModE *great* /greɪt/ ~ *greater* /ˈgreɪtə/.)

(9) **ME [ɑː]** < OE [ɑ / eɑ] in stressed open syllables: ME *māken* < OE *macian*

Modern English sound changes

The Great Vowel Shift

ME /iː/ > ModE /aɪ/	ME *chīld* /tʃiːld/ > (EModE [tʃəild] >) ModE *child* /tʃaɪld/
ME /uː/ > ModE /aʊ/	ME *hous* /huːs/ > (EModE [həus] >) ModE *house* /haʊs/
ME /eː/ > ModE /iː/	ME *féld* /feːld/ > ModE *field* /fiːld/
ME /oː/ > ModE /uː/	ME *món* /moːn/ > ModE *moon* /muːn/
ME /ɛː/ > ModE /iː/	ME *mèl* /mɛːl/ > (EModE [meːl] >) ModE *meal* /miːl/
ME /ɔː/ > ModE /əʊ/	ME *bòt* /bɔːt/ > (EModE [boːt] >) ModE *boat* /bəʊt/
ME /ou/ > ModE /əʊ/	ME *blouen* /ˈblouən/ > ModE *blow* /bləʊ/
ME /ɑː/ > ModE /eɪ/	ME *nāme* /ˈnɑːmə/ > EModE [nɛːm] > ModE *name* /neɪm/
ME /ɑi, ei/ > ModE /eɪ/	ME *day, dai* /dɑi, dei/ > EModE [dɛː] > ModE *day* /deɪ/
ME /ɑu/ > ModE /ɔː/	ME *daun* /dɑun/ > ModE *dawn* /dɔːn/
ME /eu, iu/ > ModE /juː/	ME *feue, fiue* /ˈfeuə, ˈfiuə/ > ModE *few* /fjuː/

Exceptions to the GVS

ModE *great, break, steak, drain* /eɪ/ < ME /ɛː/

ModE *broad* /ɔː/ < ME /ɔː/

ModE *room, droop* /uː/ < ME /uː/

ModE *bear, pear, tear* (v), etc. /eə/ < ME /ɛː/; cf. ModE *ear, hear, tear* (n), etc.

ME stressed short monophthongs in ModE

ME /i/ > ModE /ɪ/	ModE *fill, big*
ME /e/ > ModE /e/[1] > EModE /ɑ/ (sporadically before /r/)	ModE *sell, dress* ModE *far, sergeant*
ME /u/ > ModE /ʌ/: UNROUNDING (& lowering)[2] > ModE /ʊ/ (sporadically after labials)	ModE *duck, come* ModE *full, bush, put, woman*
ME /o/ > ModE /ɒ/	ModE *lot, strong*
ME /ɑ/ > ModE /æ/: FRONTING[3] > ModE /ɒ/: ROUNDING (after /w/)	ModE *that, man* ModE *what, wander*

---

[1] Now usually open-mid [ɛ] in both BrE and AmE.
[2] Not in the North of England: *duck, come* /N dʊk, kʊm/; often mid-centralised to stressed [ə] in AmE and parts of England.
[3] Now usually lowered to [a] in BrE. For other recent changes in BrE, see Lindsey, G. (2012) *The British English vowel system*, http://englishspeechservices.com/blog/british-vowels/.

Loss of ME non-prevocalic /r/ (in non-rhotic accents)

Compensatory lengthening after short vowels (except /ə/)

ME /ir/ > ⎤		ModE *birth*
ME /er/ > ⎬ ModE /ɜː/		ModE *term*
ME /ur/ > ⎦		ModE *curve*
ME /or/ > ModE /ɔː/		ModE *corn*
ME /ɑr/ > ModE /ɑː/		ModE *arm*
ME /ər/ > ModE /ə/		ModE *bigger*

R-vocalisation after long vowels and diphthongs

ME /iːr/ >GVS EModE /aɪr/ > ModE /aɪ ə/	ModE *fire*
ME /uːr/ >GVS EModE /aʊr/ > ModE /aʊ ə/	ModE *our*
ME /eːr/ >GVS EModE /iːr/ > ModE /ɪə/ (> now often [ɪː])	ModE *beer*
ME /ɛːr/ (a) >GVS EModE /iːr/ > ModE /ɪə/ (")	ModE *ear*
ME /ɛːr/ (b) > ModE /eə/ (no GVS) (> PDE [ɛː])	ModE *bear*
ME /oːr, iur/ >GVS EModE /(j)uːr/ > ModE /(j)ʊə/ (> /(j)ɔː/)	ModE *moor, pure*
ME /ɔːr, our/ >GVS EModE /oʊr/ > ModE /ɔə/ > PDE /ɔː/	ModE *more, pour*
ME /ɑːr, air, eir/ >GVS EModE /eɪr/ > ModE /eə/ (> PDE [ɛː])	ModE *care, fair, heir*

Loss of ME [x, ç] and changes in preceding vowels

ME [x, ç] > ModE Ø

LME V̆x / V̆ç > ModE V̄	(compensatory lengthening)

CHANGE	EXAMPLE
ME [iːç] > LME [iː] >GVS ModE /aɪ/	ME *līght* /liːçt/ > LME /liːt/ > ModE /laɪt/
ME [iç] > LME [iː] >GVS ModE /aɪ/	ME *knight* [kniçt] > LME /kniːt/ > ModE /naɪt/
ME [eiç] > ModE /eɪ/	ME *eighte* [ˈeiçtə] > ModE *eight* /eɪt/
ME [aux] > LME [au] >GVS ModE /ɔː/	ME *taught(e)* [ˈtauxt(ə)] > LME [taut] > ModE /tɔːt/
ME word-final [oux] > ModE /əʊ/	ME *though* [ðoux] > ModE /ðəʊ/
ME [ouxt] > ModE /ɔːt/	ME *thought(e)* [ˈθouxt(ə)] > ModE thought /θɔːt/
ME [uːx] > LME [uː] >GVS ModE /aʊ/	ME *drought* [druːxt] > LME [druːt] > ModE /draʊt/

Sometimes ME [-ux] > ModE /f/, e.g. ME *cough(en)* [ˈkoux(ən)] > ModE *cough* /kɒf/, ME *draught* [drauxt] > LME [draft] > ModE *draught/draft* /drɑːft/.

Changes before dark L

ME /ɑl/ > LME /ɑu(l)/ >$_{GVS}$ ModE /ɔ:(l)/	ModE *all* /ɔ:l/, *talk* /tɔ:k/
ME /ɑl+C^{LABIAL}/ > ModE /ɑ:+C^{LABIAL}/	ModE *calm* /kɑ:m/, *half* /hɑ:f/
ME /ol/ > LME /ou(l)/ >$_{GVS}$ ModE /əʊ(l)/	ModE *bolt* /bəʊlt/, *folk* /fəʊk/

Quantitative vowel changes

Shortening before dentals, alveolars and [k]

ME /ɛ:/ > ModE /e/	ModE *bread, dead, death, threat*
ME /o:/ (a) >$_{GVS}$ EModE /u:/ > ModE /ʊ/	ModE *foot, good, would; book, cook, look*
ME /o:/ (b) >$_{GVS}$ EModE /u:/ > EModE /ʊ/ >$_{UNROUNDING}$ ModE /ʌ/	ModE *blood, brother, does, sun, nothing, month*

Lengthening of ME /a/ before voiceless fricatives and /nC/ (Southern British)

Examples ModE *bath* /bɑ:θ/, *past, glass, ask, bath, after, dance, demand, branch*, etc.

Consonant cluster simplifications

Initial ModE **k**now, **g**naw, **w**rite, **w**hite

Final ModE *dam**n**, autum**n**, hym**n**; tom**b**, com**b**, bom**b**, plum**b**; sing /sɪŋ/, sang, long*

Medial ModE *cas**t**le, whis**t**le; fas**t**en, mois**t**en; of**t**en, sof**t**en; Chris**t**mas; mus**c**le*

Yod-coalescence (palatalisation)

EModE /sj/ > ModE /ʃ/ EModE /zj/ > ModE /ʒ/ EModE /tj/ > ModE /tʃ/ EModE /dj/ > ModE /dʒ/	___ unstressed /u:, ʊ, ʊə, u, ə/

Examples ModE *pen**si**on* (< EModE /ˈpensjən/), *o**c**ean, i**ssu**e; deci**si**on, plea**su**re, u**su**al; que**sti**on, righ**te**ous, na**tu**re; sol**di**er, gran**deu**r, edu**ca**tion.*

Now often also before stressed /u:, ʊə/ in BrE: *Tuesday* /ˈt**ʃ**u:zdeɪ/, *endure* /ɪnˈ**dʒ**ʊə, ɪnˈ**dʒ**ɔ:/, *assume* /əˈ**ʃ**u:m/, *presume* /prəˈ**ʒ**u:m/.

Yod-dropping

EModE /j/ > ModE Ø / C^{CORONAL} ___ /u:, ʊə/	

PRECEDING C	GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION	EXAMPLES
/r, dʒ/	standard in both BrE and AmE	ModE *rude, rural; jewel, jury*
/l, s/	standard in AmE; usual in BrE	ModE *revolution, lunatic; suit, sue*
/z, θ, n, t, d/	standard in AmE; possible in BrE	ModE *presume; enthusiasm; new; tune; dude*

Synchronic irregularities in Modern English (revision questions)

1. Explain the allomorphy of **(a)** the substantival pl and gen (and verbal 3rd sg pres indic) ending {-s}: /-ɪz, -z, -s/; **(b)** the past tense/ptc suffix {-D}: /ɪd, -d, -t/.

2. Explain the irregular plural formation in the following groups of nouns: **(a)** *loaf ~ loaves, thief ~ thieves*; *mouth* /maʊθ/ *~ mouths* /maʊðz/, *path* /pɑ:θ, N & AmE pæθ/ *~ paths* /pɑ:ðz, pæðz/, *house* /haʊs/ *~ houses* /ˈhaʊzɪz/; **(b)** *sheep ~ sheepØ, deer, swine*; **(c)** *ox ~ oxen, chīld ~ chĭld|r|en, brother ~ brethren*; **(d)** /æ ~ e/: *man ~ men*; /u: ~ i:/: *tooth ~ teeth, goose ~ geese*; /ʊ ~ i:/: *foot ~ feet*; /aʊ ~ aɪ/: *mouse ~ mice, louse ~ lice*.

3. *News* is now an uncountable noun although it is composed of {NEW}+{S}. Explain why. (Cf OE *hwæt niwes*.)

4. Explain the use of the definite article with independent adjectives and adverbs, as in **The** *more* **the** *merrier, but* **the** *fewer* **the** *better fare* and **The** *longer she lives* **the** *shorter she grows*.

5. Explain the identical meaning on the definite and the indefinite articles in **(i)** *at* **the** *end of his patience* and **(ii)** *His patience is at* **an** *end*. (ii. < ME *atten ende* < OE *æt þæm ende*.)

6. Explain the difference in the scope of negation between **(i)** *What we need is* **not** *a man but a woman* and **(ii)** **Not** *a man of them could swim*.

7. Explain the origin of the distribution of **(a)** *my* vs *mine*; **(b)** the three forms of the indefinite article: *a, an, one*[†]. (Cf (i) *'I need a pen or a pencil.' ~ 'I'll get you a pen.'* and (ii) *'I need a pen.' ~ 'I'll get you one.'*) [†according to Halliday & Hasan 1976]

8. Initial /ð/ is not as a rule lost in weak forms of function words (e.g. *that, they, the*). However, the weak form of *them* (*I'll take them* /ðəm/) may be further weakened to *'em* /əm/ (*I'll take'em* /ˈteɪkəm/, informal). Explain why.

9. Explain why the nom sg of the 1st pers personal pronoun is always spelled with a capital letter: *I*.

10. Explain the irregular degrees of comparison in **(a)** *old ~ elder (-est)*; **(b)** *far ~ further/farther (-est)*.

11. Explain the incompatibility of *a great deal of* with countable nouns (*a great deal of time*, but ˣ*a great deal of people*).

12. ModE *sing ~ sang ~ sung, ring ~ rang ~ rung*, but *bring ~ brought ~ brought*, not ˣ*brang ~* ˣ*brung*. Explain why.

13. Explain the (apparently) uninflected form of *go* in *It is important that he go*.

14. Explain why modal verbs are not inflected for the 3rd sg (pres indic) and have no non-finite forms (*ˣHe **cans** do it, ˣHe is **canning** do it, ˣto can do sth*).

15. Explain why modal verbs combine with the bare infinitive and not the *to*-infinitive (*ˣHe can to go*).

16. Explain the origin of the suppletive paradigm of the verb *go*.

17. Explain the relation between *He had cut his hair* and *He had his hair cut*.

18. Explain the verb forms in *She **is/was gone*** and *May Fielding **was** already **come**, and so **was** her mother* (Dickens).

19. Explain the passive meaning of **(a)** the simple infinitive in *There's nothing **to do*** and *the right thing **to do***; **(b)** the simple gerund in *The wall wants **painting*** and *My shoes need **mending.***

20. Explain the two notionally opposite uses of the progressive in **(i)** *He is combing his hair (at the moment)* and **(ii)** *He is **always** combing his hair.*

21. Explain why the recipient of the action (which as a rule surfaces as an indirect object in the dative) is expressed by the nominative case in **(a)** ***She** was given a ring*; **(b)** ***He** happened to be there.*

22. Explain the meaning and function of **(a)** *it* in *It is raining*; **(b)** *it* in ***It** is hard to find the house*; **(c)** *there* in ***There's** a man over there*; **(d)** *one* in *My car's no good: I need a new **one***; **(e)** *do* in *You should write it as I **did.***

23. Explain the etymological relation between **(i)** *shirt* and *skirt*; **(ii)** *shatter* and *scatter.*

24. Explain the meaning of **(a)** *deer* in *Rats and mice and such small deer* (Shakespeare); **(b)** *fowl* in *fowler, fowling, wildfowl*; **(c)** *tide* in *Eastertide, eventide*; **(d)** *meat* in *meat and drink, sweetmeats, mincemeat*; **(e)** *quick* in *quicksilver, the quick and the dead*; **(f)** *fast* in *fast asleep, steadfast.*

25. Comment on the following extract from Shakespeare's *As you Like it* (V, I, 52), where the jester Touchstone jeers at the peasant William:

    TOUCHSTONE: *... Therefore, you clown, abandon, – which is in the vulgar leave, – the society, – which in the boorish is company, – of this female, – which in the common is woman; which together is: abandon the society of this female; or, clown, thou perishest; or, to thy better understanding, diest.*

26. Explain the consonant alternations in the following pairs (of etymologically related words): *bath* /bɑː**θ**, *N & AmE* bæ**θ**/ ~ *bathe* /beɪ**ð**/; *grass* /grɑː**s**, *N & AmE* græ**s**/ ~ *graze* /greɪ**z**/; *calf* /kɑː**f**, *AmE* kæ**f**/ ~ *calve* /kɑː**v**, *AmE* kæ**v**/; *breath* /bre**θ**/ ~ *breathe* /briː**ð**/.

27. ModE <s> is usually voiced between vowel letters in native words (< EOE fricative voicing), as in *nose* /nəʊ**z**/ (< OE *nosu*). However, in *goose* /guː**s**/, *house* (noun) /haʊ**s**/ and *mouse* /maʊ**s**/ it is voiceless. Explain why.

28. Explain the vowel alternations in the following pairs. /əʊ ~ iː/: *whole ~ heal*; /ɒ ~ iː/ *hot ~ heat*; /ʌ ~ iː/ *blood ~ bleed*; /uː ~ iː/: *brood ~ breed, doom ~ deem, food ~ feed*; /əʊ ~ ɪ/: *gold ~ gild*; /ʊ ~ ɪ/: *full ~ fill*; /ɒ ~ e/: *strong ~ strength, long ~ length*; /ɔː ~ e/: *broad ~ breadth*; /eɪ ~ e/: *tale ~ tell, sale ~ sell.*

29. Explain the vowel alternations in **(a)** *child* /aɪ/ ~ *children* /ɪ/; **(b)** *wild* /aɪ/ ~ *bewilder, wilderness* /ɪ/.

30. Comment on **(a)** Jonathan Swift's alleged remark on the pronunciation /wɪnd/ for *wind* (noun): 'I have a great /maɪnd/ to /faɪnd/ why you pronounce it /wɪnd/.' (18th c.); **(b)** the rhyme in the following couplet from Byron's *Mazeppa* (1819):

    We rustled through the leaves like **wind**,
    Left shrubs, and trees, and wolves be**hind**.

31. Explain the orthographic representation of /ʌ/ in *son, come, love, above*, etc.

32. Explain the vowel alternations in the following pairs: *shadow* /æ/ ~ *shade* /eɪ/; *bath, grass* /ɑː, N & AmE æ/ ~ *bathe, graze* /eɪ/.

33. Explain the vowel alternations **(a)** in the pres and past forms of the following weak verbs: /i: ~ e/: *keep ~ kept, deal ~ dealt, leave ~ left*; /u: ~ ɒ/: *lose ~ lost*; **(b)** in *five* /aɪ/ ~ *fifteen, fifty, fifth* /ɪ/.

34. Explain the vowel alternations in the pairs *holy* /əʊ/ ~ *holiday* /ɒ/; *south* /aʊ/ ~ *southern, southerly* /ʌ/.

35. Explain **(a)** the irregular correspondence between spelling and pronunciation in b**u**ry /ˈberi/, b**u**sy /ˈbɪzi/ and b**ui**ld /bɪld/; **(b)** the orthographic inconsistency in the related words *m**e**rry* and *m**i**rth*.

36. Explain the phonological and orthographic irregularity of the plural of *woman* /ˈwʊmən/ ~ *women* /ˈwɪmɪn/.

37. Explain the unusual grapheme–phoneme correspondence in *s**ai**d* /s**e**d/ and *s**ays** /s**e**z/.

38. Explain the difference in the pronunciation of the homographs *bow* /bəʊ/ and *bow* /baʊ/.

39. Explain the orthographic variation in the representation of the phoneme /i:/ in **(a)** *feet, meet* and **(b)** *feat, meat*.

40. Explain the homophony in *sail ~ sale, tail ~ tale, fair ~ fare*.

41. Explain the difference between the names of the letters in the English (/eɪ, bi:/, etc.) and their usual continental names ([ɑː, be:] etc).

42. Explain the unusual grapheme–phoneme correspondence in **(a)** *break, great, steak* /eɪ/; **(b)** *broad* /ɔː/; **(c)** <i> in an open syllable = /i:/ in *machine, police, routine, caprice*; <a> in an open syllable = /ɑː/ in *vase, façade, promenade*; <ou> = /u:/ in *group, route, soup, coup* /ku:/.

43. Explain the different phonemic values for **(a)** the digraph <ea> in **(i)** /i:/ in *lean, meal, steal* and **(ii)** /e/ in *bread, dead, head, death, sweat*; **(b)** the digraph <oo> in **(i)** /u:/ in *moon, fool, soon* , **(ii)** /ʌ/ in *blood, flood* and **(iii)** /ʊ/ in *book, look, cook, took, foot, good, stood*.

44. Explain the unusual grapheme–phoneme correspondences in **(a)** *clerk* /klɑːk/, *sergeant* /ˈsɑːdʒənt/, *derby* /ˈdɑːbi/, *Berkshire* /ˈbɑːkʃə/, *Hertford* /ˈhɑː(t)fəd/; **(b)** *heart* /hɑːt/, *hearth* /hɑːθ/.

45. Explain the orthographic variation in the representation of the phoneme **(a)** /ɜː/ in *fur, her, girl, learn, word*; **(b)** /ɪə/ in *here, beer, clear*; **(c)** /eə/ in *bear, there, care, fair, heir*; **(d)** /ɔː/ in *oar, more, door, court, sure* /ʃɔː, ʃʊə/, *Europe* /ˈjʊərəp, ˈjɔːrəp/.

46. Explain the different grapheme–phoneme correspondences in **(a)** <al>+C: /ɔː/ in *all, fall, small, salt, talk* vs /æ/ *altitude, alphabet, valve*; **(b)** +C: /əʊ/ in *roll, toll, gold, bolt, folk* vs /ɒ/ in *doll, dolphin, involve, solve*; **(c)** <a> + voiceless fricative: /ɑː, æ/ in *bath, path, staff, after, class, glass, cast, master, nasty, ask, basket, grasp* vs /æ/ in *gas, mass(ive), classic, passage, passenger, aspect*.

47. EModE /ʊ/ >_{UNROUNDING} /ʌ/ (e.g. *cut, sun*, etc.). However, *bull, bullet, bully, bush, butcher, full, pudding, pull, push, put* (and many others) still have /ʊ/. Explain why.

48. Explain the different phonemic values for the digraph <gh>: **(i)** /Ø/ in *light, night, brought, caught; through, dough*, but **(ii)** /f/ in *cough, enough, laugh, rough; laughter, draught*.

49. Explain the semantic, phonological and etymological relation between *of* /əv, *strong* ɒv/ and *off* /ɒf/.

50. Explain the variation in the pronunciation of *issue* /ˈɪʃuː, ˈsjuː/, *casual* /ˈkæʒuəl, ˈkæzjuəl/, *question* /ˈkwestʃən, -tjən/, *educate* /ˈedʒəkeɪt, ˈedjə-/; *tune* /tʃuːn, tjuːn, tuːn/, *produce* /prəˈdʒuːs, prəˈdjuːs, prəˈduːs/.

51. Explain the presence of final silent letters in **(a)** *bomb, climb, comb, dumb, lamb, plumb, tomb; autumn, column, condemn, damn, hymn, solemn; bring* /brɪŋ/, *sing, wrong*, etc.; and **(b)** *crumb, limb, numb, thumb*.

52. Explain the silent <t> in *castle* /ˈkɑːs(ə)l/, *whistle, fasten, Christmas, postman, often* /ˈɒf(ə)n/, *soften*. Comment on the variant /ˈɒft(ə)n/.

53. Explain the presence of initial silent letters in *gnaw, gnat; know, knife; wrong, write*.

54. Explain the variation in the pronunciation of **(a)** *why* /waɪ, hwaɪ/; **(b)** *huge* /hjuːdʒ, juːdʒ/.

55. Explain the presence of silent <l> in **(a)** *walk, folk, half*; **(b)** *calm, balm, palm, almond* /ˈɑːmənd/; **(c)** *should, would; could*.

56. Explain the presence of **(a)** silent <b> in *debt* and *doubt*; **(b)** silent <s> in *island*.

57. Explain the unusual grapheme–phoneme correspondences in **(a)** *people* /iː/; **(b)** *nephew* /ˈnefjuː, BrE old-fashioned ˈnevjuː/.

THE INTERNATIONAL PHONETIC ALPHABET (revised to 2005)

CONSONANTS (PULMONIC)

	Bilabial	Labiodental	Dental	Alveolar	Postalveolar	Retroflex	Palatal	Velar	Uvular	Pharyngeal	Glottal
Plosive	p b			t d		ʈ ɖ	c ɟ	k g	q ɢ		ʔ
Nasal	m	ɱ		n		ɳ	ɲ	ŋ	ɴ		
Trill	ʙ			r					ʀ		
Tap or Flap		ⱱ		ɾ		ɽ					
Fricative	ɸ β	f v	θ ð	s z	ʃ ʒ	ʂ ʐ	ç ʝ	x ɣ	χ ʁ	ħ ʕ	h ɦ
Lateral fricative				ɬ ɮ							
Approximant		ʋ		ɹ		ɻ	j	ɰ			
Lateral approximant				l		ɭ	ʎ	ʟ			

Where symbols appear in pairs, the one to the right represents a voiced consonant. Shaded areas denote articulations judged impossible.

CONSONANTS (NON-PULMONIC)

Clicks	Voiced implosives	Ejectives
ʘ Bilabial	ɓ Bilabial	’ Examples:
ǀ Dental	ɗ Dental/alveolar	p’ Bilabial
ǃ (Post)alveolar	ʄ Palatal	t’ Dental/alveolar
ǂ Palatoalveolar	ɠ Velar	k’ Velar
ǁ Alveolar lateral	ʛ Uvular	s’ Alveolar fricative

VOWELS

Where symbols appear in pairs, the one to the right represents a rounded vowel.

OTHER SYMBOLS

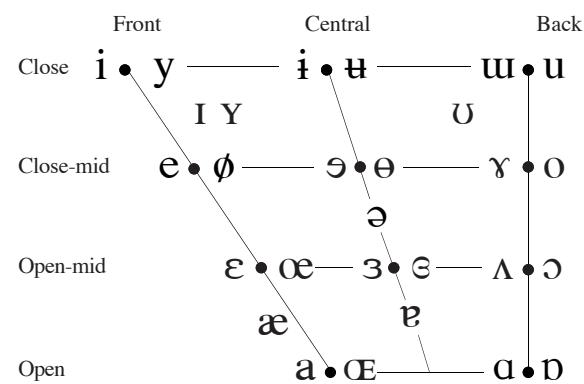|	
ʍ Voiceless labial-velar fricative	ɕ ʑ Alveolo-palatal fricatives
w Voiced labial-velar approximant	ɺ Voiced alveolar lateral flap
ɥ Voiced labial-palatal approximant	ɧ Simultaneous ʃ and x
ʜ Voiceless epiglottal fricative	
ʢ Voiced epiglottal fricative	Affricates and double articulations can be represented by two symbols joined by a tie bar if necessary. k͡p t͡s
ʡ Epiglottal plosive	

SUPRASEGMENTALS

ˈ	Primary stress
ˌ	Secondary stress ˌfoʊnəˈtɪʃən
ː	Long eː
ˑ	Half-long eˑ
˘	Extra-short ĕ
ǀ	Minor (foot) group
‖	Major (intonation) group
.	Syllable break ɹi.ækt
‿	Linking (absence of a break)

DIACRITICS

Diacritics may be placed above a symbol with a descender, e.g. ŋ̊

̥	Voiceless	n̥ d̥	̤	Breathy voiced	b̤ a̤	̪ Dental	t̪ d̪
̬	Voiced	s̬ t̬	̰	Creaky voiced	b̰ a̰	̺ Apical	t̺ d̺
ʰ	Aspirated	tʰ dʰ	̼	Linguolabial	t̼ d̼	̻ Laminal	t̻ d̻
̹	More rounded	ɔ̹	ʷ	Labialized	tʷ dʷ	̃ Nasalized	ẽ
̜	Less rounded	ɔ̜	ʲ	Palatalized	tʲ dʲ	ⁿ Nasal release	dⁿ
̟	Advanced	u̟	ˠ	Velarized	tˠ dˠ	ˡ Lateral release	dˡ
̠	Retracted	e̠	ˤ	Pharyngealized	tˤ dˤ	̚ No audible release	d̚
̈	Centralized	ë	̴	Velarized or pharyngealized	ɫ		
̽	Mid-centralized	ĕ	̝	Raised	e̝ (ɹ̝ = voiced alveolar fricative)		
̩	Syllabic	n̩	̞	Lowered	e̞ (β̞ = voiced bilabial approximant)		
̯	Non-syllabic	e̯	̘	Advanced Tongue Root	e̘		
˞	Rhoticity	ɚ a˞	̙	Retracted Tongue Root	e̙		

TONES AND WORD ACCENTS

LEVEL		CONTOUR	
e̋ or ˥	Extra high	ě or ˩˥	Rising
é ˦	High	ê ˥˩	Falling
ē ˧	Mid	e᷄ ˧˥	High rising
è ˨	Low	e᷅ ˩˧	Low rising
ȅ ˩	Extra low	e᷈ ˧˩˧	Rising-falling
↓ Downstep		↗ Global rise	
↑ Upstep		↘ Global fall	